

Contents

A-Z

BMW M



The Ultimate
Driving Machine



THE BMW X5 M AND THE BMW X6 M. OWNER'S MANUAL.

X5 M X6 M **Owner's Manual for Vehicle**

Thank you for choosing a BMW X5 M/BMW X6 M.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW X5 M/BMW X6 M. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW X5 M/BMW X6 M. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW X5 M/BMW X6 M.

Any updates made after the editorial deadline for the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual are found in the appendix of the printed Quick Reference for the vehicle.

Supplementary information can be found in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

BMW AG

The Owner's Manual is available in many countries as an app.
For more information, go to
www.bmw.com/bmw_drivers_guide

© 2014 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written
consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English X/14, 11 14 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

ADDENDUM TO BMW X5 AND X6 OWNER'S MANUAL 1402956993

We wanted to provide you with some updates and clarifications with respect to the printed BMW Owner's Manual. These updates and clarifications will supersede the materials contained in that document.

1. Where the terms "service center," "the service center," "your service center," "service specialist," or "service" are used in the Owner's Manual, we wanted to clarify that the terms refer to a BMW dealer's service center or another service center or repair shop that employs trained personnel that can perform maintenance and repair work on your vehicle in accordance with BMW specifications.
2. Where the text of the Owner's Manual contains an affirmative instruction to contact a "service center" or "your service center," we wanted to clarify that BMW recommends that, if you are faced with one of the situations addressed by that text, you contact or seek the assistance of a BMW dealer's service center or another service center or repair shop that employs trained personnel that can perform maintenance and repair work on your vehicle in accordance with BMW specifications.

While BMW of North America LLC, at no cost to you, will pay for repairs required by the limited warranties provided with respect to your

vehicle and for maintenance under the Maintenance Program during the applicable warranty and maintenance coverage periods, you are free to elect, both during those periods and thereafter, to have maintenance and repair work provided by other service centers or repair shops.

3. Where the Owner's Manual makes reference to parts and accessories having been approved by BMW, those references are intended to reflect that those parts and accessories are recommended by BMW of North America LLC. You may elect to use other parts and accessories, but, if you do, we recommend that you make sure that any such parts and/or accessories are appropriate for use on your vehicle.
4. At page 7, under the warranty section's discussion of homologation, where it states that you "cannot lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there," the text should read that you "may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there."
5. At page 7, under the "Parts and accessories" section, in the sixth sentence, the word "cannot" should read "does not."
6. At page 56, in the "Check and replace safety belts" section, the

text beginning, "This should only be done . . ." should be disregarded and the following text should be read in lieu thereof: "BMW recommends having this work performed by a service center as it is important that this safety feature functions properly."

7. At page 57, under the heading: "Active head restraint," the paragraph beginning, "Only attach accessories . . ." should be disregarded and the following text should be read in lieu thereof: "BMW recommends that you attach accessories approved by BMW to the seat or head restraint."

8. At page 74, under the heading "Have the malfunction corrected," the text should be disregarded and the following text should be read in lieu thereof:

If the parking brake has been released manually in response to a malfunction, it is strongly recommended that a technician return it to operation and that you have the malfunction corrected at your BMW dealer's service center or another service center or repair shop that employs trained personnel that can perform maintenance and repair work on your vehicle in accordance with BMW specifications.

9. At page 100, under the heading: "Special windshield," the paragraph beginning, "Therefore, have the special windshield . . ." should be disregarded and the following text

should be read in lieu thereof: "BMW recommends that you have the special windshield replaced by the service center."

10. At page 178 under the heading: "Objects within the range of movement of the pedals" and at page 228 under the heading: "Carpets and floor mats," the paragraph that begins: "Only use floor mats . . ." should be disregarded and the following language should be read in lieu thereof: "The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you use floor mats that have been identified by it as appropriate for use in your vehicle and that can be properly fixed in place."
11. At page 194, under the heading "Tire inflation pressure specifications," the sentence beginning, "Tire inflation pressure specifications apply to approved tire sizes . . ." should be disregarded.
12. At page 199, under the heading: "Mounting," the paragraph beginning, "Have mounting and balancing . . ." should be disregarded and the following text should be read in lieu thereof: "BMW recommends that you have mounting and balancing performed by your service center or a tire mounting specialist."
13. At page 199, under the heading: "Approved wheels and tires," the term "Approved" should be disregarded and in lieu thereof, the term "Recommended" should be

read in its place. In addition, the text of that section should be disregarded and the following text should be read in lieu thereof:

The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type; otherwise, for example, despite having the same official size ratings, variations can lead to body contact and with it, the risk of severe accidents.

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not evaluate non-recommended wheels and tires to determine if they are suitable for use on your vehicle.

14. At page 203, under the heading: "Fine-link snow chains," the text should be disregarded and the following text should be read in lieu thereof:

Only certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of your vehicle and are determined by the manufacturer of your vehicle to be road safe and are recommended by the manufacturer of your vehicle.

Information about recommended snow chains is available from a service center.

15. At page 204, under the heading "Hood," the sentence beginning, "If you are unfamiliar" should be disregarded.

16. At page 208, under the heading: "Approved engine oil types," the references to "Approved" should be read as "Suitable." Where it reads: You can add oils with the following specifications," that text should be disregarded, and the following text read in lieu thereof: "Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards: . . ."

17. At page 208, under the heading: "Alternative engine oil types," the text preceding the chart should be disregarded, and in lieu thereof should be read as follows: "If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added: . . ." The reference to "specification" should be read as "rating."

18. At page 208, under the heading: "Engine oil change," the text should be disregarded and in lieu thereof should be read as follows:

BMW recommends that you have the oil changed at your BMW dealer's service center or at another service center that has trained personnel that can perform the work in accordance with BMW specifications.

19. At page 211, under the heading: "Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models," the second paragraph should be disregarded and the following text read in lieu thereof:

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you have maintenance and repair performed by your BMW dealer's service center or another service center or repair shop that employs trained personnel that can perform maintenance and repair work on your vehicle in accordance with BMW specifications. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you maintain records of all maintenance and repair work performed on your vehicle.

otherwise the vehicle could be damaged and systems or functions may not be fully available.

After a battery replacement, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you have the battery registered on your vehicle by a service center to ensure that all comfort functions are fully available, and that any "check control" messages of these comfort functions are no longer displayed.

20. At page 214 and page 215, where it reads: "Do not perform work/bulb replacement on xenon headlights," that text should be disregarded and in lieu thereof the following text should be read: "Xenon headlamp work or replacement can cause serious and fatal injuries." In the text that follows, where it reads: "[h]ave any work on the xenon lighting system . . . ," the following words should be read as preceding that passage: "It is strongly suggested that you"

21. At page 218, under the "Battery replacement" section, the text should be disregarded and in lieu thereof the following text should be read:

Use of recommended vehicle batteries

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you use vehicle batteries that it has tested and recommends for use in your vehicle;

Contents

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 236.

6 Notes

At a glance

- 14 Cockpit
- 18 iDrive
- 26 Voice activation system
- 29 Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Controls

- 34 Opening and closing
- 52 Adjusting
- 63 Transporting children safely
- 68 Driving
- 84 Displays
- 101 Lights
- 106 Safety
- 129 Driving stability control systems
- 135 Driving comfort
- 150 Climate control
- 157 Interior equipment
- 168 Storage compartments

Driving tips

- 176 BMW X5 M and BMW X6 M Technology
- 177 Things to remember when driving
- 181 Loading
- 185 Saving fuel

Mobility

- 190 Refueling
- 192 Fuel
- 194 Wheels and tires
- 204 Engine compartment
- 206 Engine oil
- 209 Coolant
- 211 Maintenance
- 213 Replacing components
- 220 Breakdown assistance
- 225 Care

Reference

- 232 Technical data
- 236 Everything from A to Z

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Any updates made after the editorial deadline for the Owner's Manuals are found in the appendix of the printed Quick Reference for the vehicle.

User's manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The topics of Navigation, Entertainment, Communication and the short commands of the voice activation system are described in a separate user's manual, which is also included with the onboard literature.

Symbols

 Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

 Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

"..." Identifies display texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.

>...< Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

»...« Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

Symbols on vehicle components

 Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, in this Owner's Manual, we also describe and illustrate features that are not available in your vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Handbook, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Handbooks.

On right-hand drive vehicles, some controls are arranged differently from what is shown in the illustrations.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Any updates made after the editorial deadline for the Owner's Manuals are found in the appendix of the printed Quick Reference for the vehicle.

For your own safety

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery - homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and permit requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you cannot lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information can be obtained from your Service Centre.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g., the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

Therefore, have this work performed only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with appropriately trained personnel.

If work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends using parts and accessories approved by BMW for this purpose.

Your BMW center is the right contact for genuine BMW parts and accessories, other products approved by BMW and related qualified advice.

BMW has tested these products for safety and suitability in relation to BMW vehicles.

BMW can assume responsibility for them.

However, we cannot assume any responsibility whatsoever for parts and accessories that have not been specifically approved by BMW.

BMW cannot evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard. This guarantee is also not applicable when country-specific government approval has been granted. Testing of this kind may fail to embrace the entire range of potential operating conditions to which components might be exposed on BMW vehicles. Such products could conceivably fail to comply with BMW's own stringent quality standards.

California Proposition 65 Warning

California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead com-

pounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for required maintenance measures:

- ▷ BMW Maintenance system

- ▷ Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models
- ▷ Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the BMW New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Data memory

Many electronic components on your vehicle are equipped with data memories that temporarily or permanently store technical information about the condition of the vehicle, events and faults. This technical information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system or the environment:

- ▷ Operating mode of system components, fill levels for instance.
- ▷ Status messages for the vehicle and from its individual components, e.g., wheel rotation speed/vehicle speed, deceleration, transverse acceleration.
- ▷ Malfunctions and faults in important system components, e.g., lights and brakes.
- ▷ Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engaging the stability control system.
- ▷ Ambient conditions, such as temperature.

This data is purely technical in nature and is used to detect and correct faults and to optimize vehicle functions. Motion profiles over routes traveled cannot be created from this data. When service offerings are used, e.g., repair services, service processes, warranty claims, quality assurance, this technical information can be read out from the event and fault memories by the service personnel, including the manufacturer, using special diagnostic tools. You can obtain further information there if you need it. After an error is corrected,

the information in the fault memory is deleted or overwritten on a continuous basis.

With the vehicle in use there are situations where you can associate these technical data with individuals if combined with other information, e.g., an accident report, damage to the vehicle, eye witness accounts — possibly with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions that are contractually agreed with the customer - such as vehicle emergency locating - you can transmit certain vehicle data from the vehicle.

Event Data Recorder EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

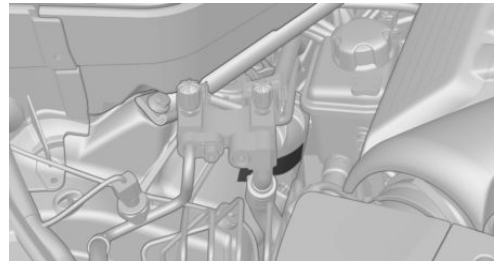
These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Vehicle identification number



The vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment.

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety>.



At a glance

These overviews of buttons, switches and displays are intended to familiarize you with your vehicle. You will also become quickly acquainted with the available control concepts and options.

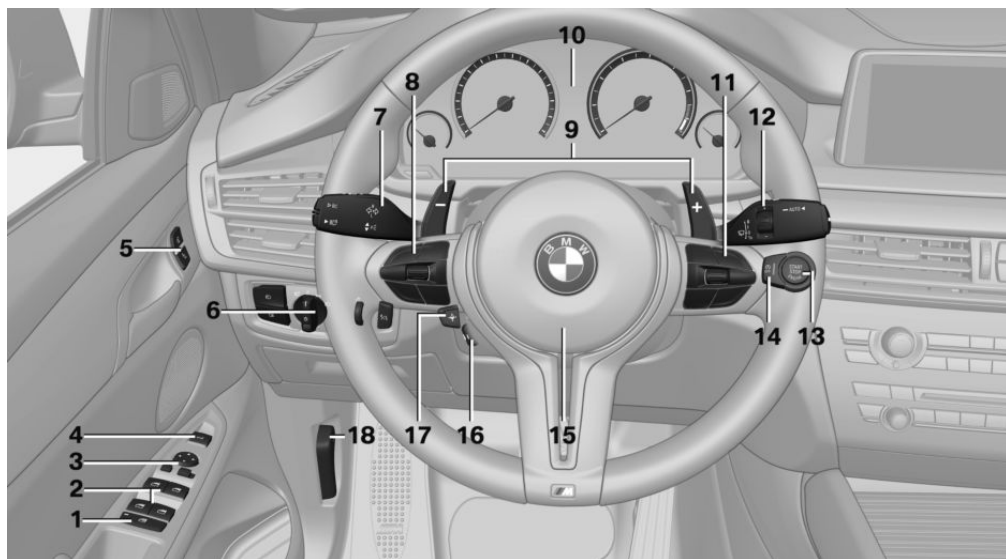
Cockpit

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

All around the steering wheel



- 1 Rear window safety reel 49
- 2 Power windows 48
- 3 Exterior mirror operation 59
- 4  Opening and closing the tailgate 40
- 5  Unlocking central locking system 39
-  Locking central locking system 39
- 6 Lights



Front fog lights 104



Parking lights 101



Low beams 101



Automatic headlight control 102

Daytime running lights 102

Adaptive Light Control 102

High-beam Assistant 103



Instrument lighting [104](#)



Night Vision, reel on/reel off heat image [119](#)

7 Steering column stalk, left



Turn signal [75](#)



High beams, head-light flasher [75](#)



High-beam Assistant [103](#)



Roadside parking lights [102](#)



Computer [95](#)

8 Steering wheel buttons, left



M Drive 1 activation [62](#)



M Drive 2 activation [62](#)



Store speed [135](#)



Resume speed [136](#)



Cruise control on/off, interrupting [135](#)

Cruise control rocker reel [136](#)

9 Shift paddles [80](#)

10 Instrument cluster [84](#)

11 Steering wheel buttons, right



Entertainment source



Volume



Voice activation [26](#)



Telephone, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication

Thumbwheel for selection lists [94](#)

12 Steering column stalk, right



Wiper [75](#)



Rain sensor [76](#)



Clean the windshields and head-lights [75](#)



BMW X5 M: rear window wiper in Canadian models [77](#)



BMW X5 M: rear window wiper [77](#)



BMW X5 M: clean rear window [77](#)

13 START STOP ENGINE Start/stop the engine and reel the ignition on/off [69](#)



Auto Start/Stop function [70](#)

15 Horn, total area

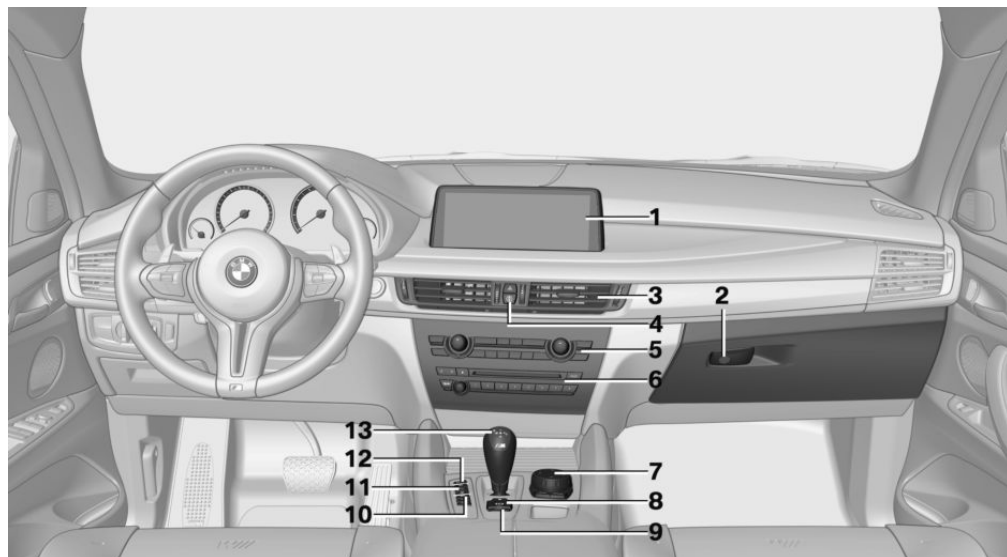
16 Steering wheel heating [61](#)



17 Adjust steering wheel [61](#)

18 Unlock hood 204

All around the center console



1 Control Display 18

2 Glove compartment 168

3 Ventilation 153

4  Hazard warning system 220 Intelligent Safety button 113

5 Automatic climate control 150

6 Radio/CD/Multimedia, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication

7 Controller with buttons 18

8  Drivelogic 809  Parking brake 72 Automatic Hold 7310  PDC Park Distance Control 137

Rearview camera 140

Top View 142

Parking assistant 146

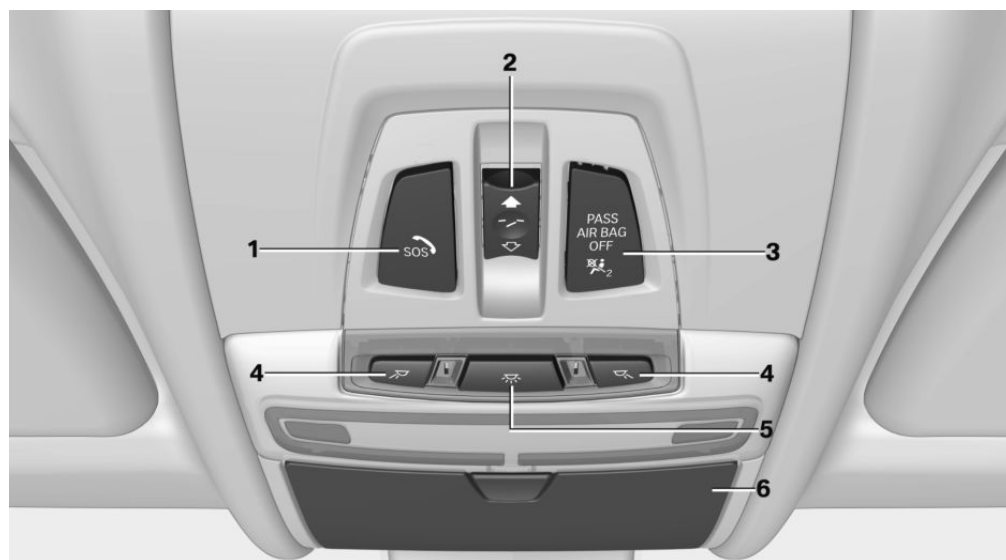
Side View 144



HDC Hill Descent Control 132

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>11  Engine Dynamics 82</p> <p> Vertical Dynamic Control 133</p> <p> Servotronic 134</p> | <p>12  DSC Dynamic Stability Control 130</p> <p>13 Transmission selector lever 78</p> |
|---|--|

All around the roofliner



- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1  Intelligent Emergency Request 220</p> <p>2  BMW X5 M: panoramic glass sunroof 49
BMW X6 M: glass sunroof, powered 49</p> <p>3  Indicator lamp, front-seat passenger airbag 108</p> | <p>4  Reading lights 105</p> <p>5  Interior lights 104</p> <p>6 Glasses compartment 170</p> |
|---|---|

iDrive

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

The concept

The iDrive combines the functions of many switches. Thus, these functions can be operated from a central location.

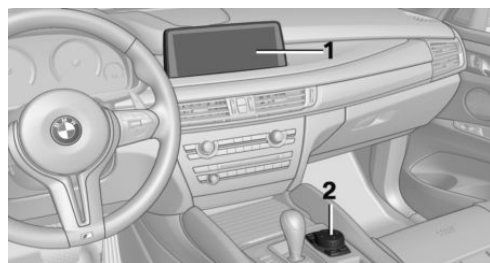


Using the iDrive during a trip

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard to your vehicle's occupants and to other traffic, never attempt to use the controls or enter information unless traffic and road conditions allow it. ◀

Control elements at a glance

Control elements



- 1 Control Display
- 2 Controller with buttons and, depending on the equipment version, with touchpad

Control Display

Hints

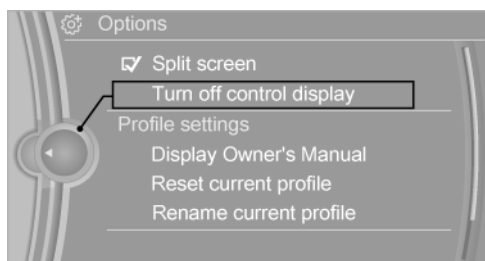
- ▶ To clean the Control Display, follow the care instructions.
- ▶ Do not place objects close to the Control Display; otherwise, the Control Display can be damaged.
- ▶ In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, e.g. due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, e.g. through shadow or climate control system, the normal functions are re-established.

Switching on

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the controller.

Switch off

1.  Press button.
2. "Turn off control display"

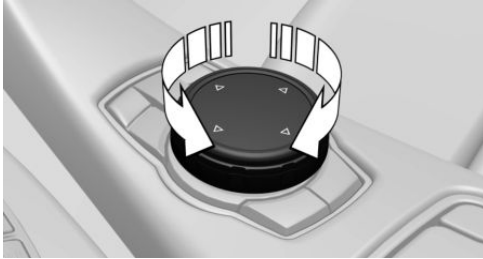


Controller with navigation system

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the controller.

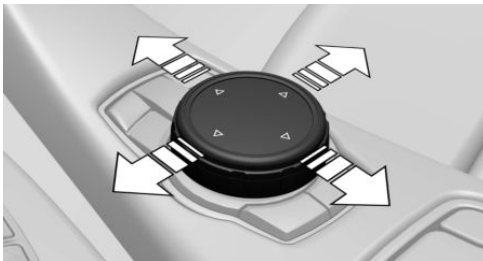
1. Turn.



2. Press.



3. Move in four directions.



Buttons on controller

Press button	Function
MENU	Open the main menu.
RADIO	Opens the Radio menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Multimedia menu.
NAV	Opens the Navigation menu.
TEL	Opens the phone menu.

Press button Function

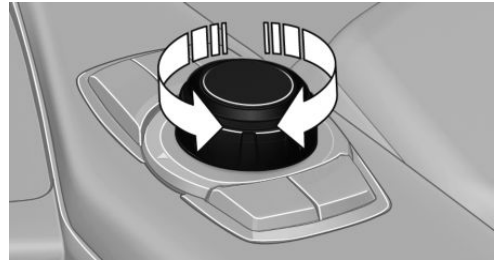
BACK	Displays the previous panel.
------	------------------------------

OPTION	Opens the Options menu.
--------	-------------------------

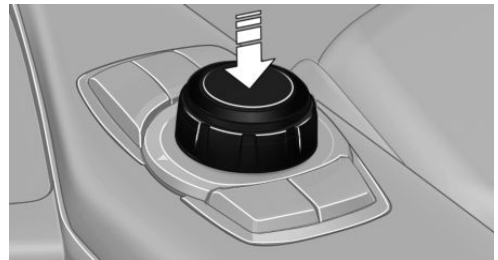
Controller without navigation system

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

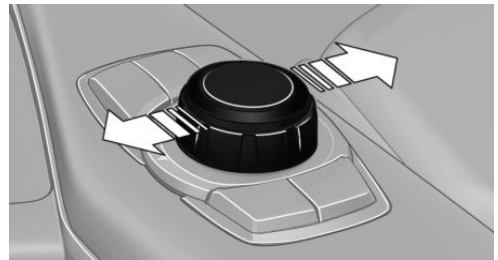
1. Turn.



2. Press.



3. Move in two directions.



Buttons on controller

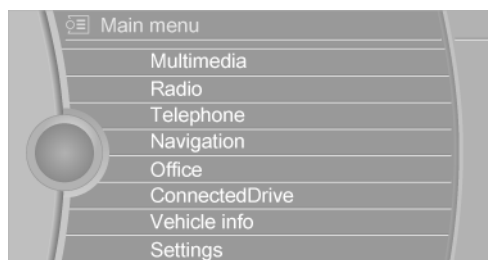
Press button	Function
MENU	Open the main menu.
Audio	Open audio menu last listened to, reel between audio menus.
TEL	Opens the phone menu.
BACK	Open previous panel.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Operating concept

Opening the main menu



Press button.



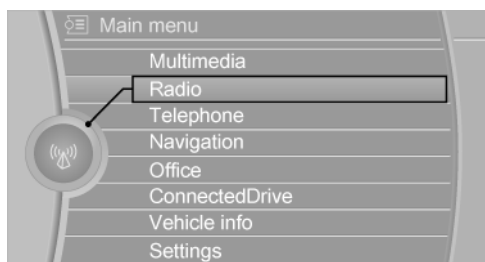
The main menu is displayed.

All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting menu items

Highlighted menu items can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.



2. Press the controller.

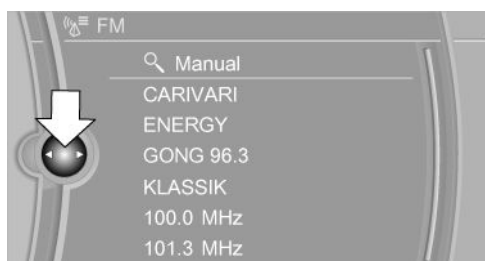
Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g., "Settings".

Changing between panels

After a menu item is selected, e.g., "Radio", a new panel is displayed. Panels can overlap.

- ▶ Move the controller to the left.
Closes current display and shows previous display.
Reopens previous display by pressing BACK button. In this case, the current panel is not closed.
- ▶ Move the controller to the right.
Opens new display on top of previous screen.



White arrows pointing to the left or right indicate that additional panels can be opened.

Display of an opened menu

When selecting a menu, it generally opens with the panel that was last selected in that menu. To display the first panel of a menu:

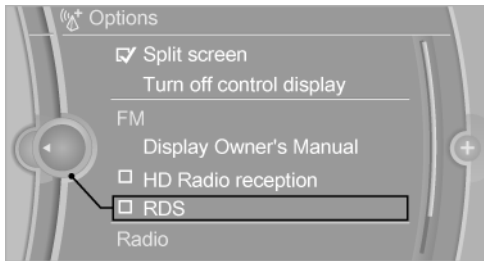
- Move the controller to the left repeatedly until the first panel is displayed.
- Press the menu button on the controller twice.

Opening the Options menu



Press button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.



Additional options: move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.

Options menu

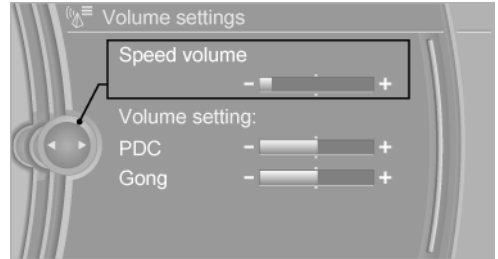
The "Options" menu consists of various areas:

- Screen settings, e.g., "Split screen".
This area remains unchanged.
- Control options for the selected main menu, e.g., for "Radio".
- If applicable, further operating options for the selected menu, e.g., "Store station".

Changing settings

1. Select a field.

2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the controller.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a check-box. It indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.



Function is activated.



Function is deactivated.

Touchpad

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the controller:

Selecting functions

1. "Settings"
2. "Touchpad"
3. Select the desired function.
 - "Speller": enter letters and numbers.
 - "Interactive map": viewing the interactive map.
 - "Browser": enter Internet addresses.
 - "Audio feedback": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

Entering letters and numbers

Entering letters requires some practice at the beginning. When entering, pay attention to the following:

- For the input of upper/lower case letters and numbers, it may be necessary to reel via the controller to the corresponding Input mode, refer to page 25, e.g. when the spelling of upper and lower case letters is identical.
- Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized. Possible input depends on the set language. Where necessary, enter special characters via the controller.
- To delete a character, slide to the left on the touchpad.
- To enter a blank space, slide to the right in the center of the touchpad.
- To enter a hyphen, slide to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
- To enter an underscore, swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using interactive map and Internet

Via touch-pad move the interactive map in the navigation system and Internet sites.

Function	Controls
Move interactive map or Internet sites.	Swipe into respective direction.
Enlarge/shrink interactive map or Internet sites.	Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.
Display the menu or open a link in the Internet.	Tap once.

Changing settings

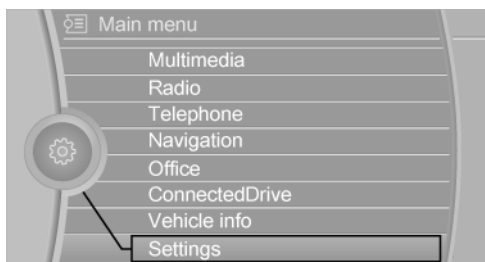
You may change control display settings via touchpad. Swipe left or right accordingly.

Example: setting the clock

Setting the clock

On the Control Display:

1.  Press button. The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the controller until "Settings" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



3. If necessary, move the controller to the left to display "Time/Date".
4. Turn the controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



5. Turn the controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



6. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
7. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

Status information

Status field

The following information is displayed in the status field at the top right:

- ▷ Time.
- ▷ Current entertainment source.
- ▷ Sound output, on/off.
- ▷ Wireless network reception strength.
- ▷ Phone status.
- ▷ Traffic bulletin reception.

Status field symbols

The symbols are grouped as follows.

Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	HD radio station is being received.
	Satellite radio is switched on.

Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Wireless network reception strength. Symbol flashes: network search.
	Wireless network is not available.
	Bluetooth is switched on.
	Roaming is active.

Symbol Meaning

	Text message was received.
	Check the SIM card.
	SIM card is blocked.
	SIM card is missing.
	Enter PIN.

Entertainment symbols

Symbol Meaning

	CD/DVD player.
	Music collection.
	Gracenote® database.
	AUX-IN port in the front or in the rear.
	USB audio interface.
	Mobile phone audio interface.

Additional symbols

Symbol Meaning

	Spoken instructions are turned off.
--	-------------------------------------

Split screen

General information

Additional information can be displayed on the right side of the split screen, e.g., information from the computer.

In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when you change to another menu.

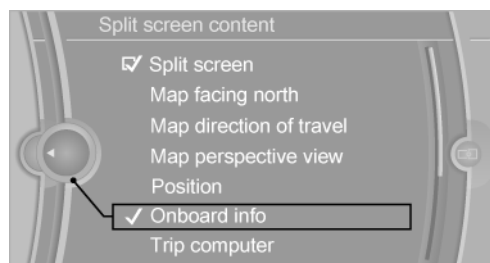
Switching the split screen on and off

1.  Press button.

2. "Split screen"

Selecting the display

1.  Press button.
2. "Split screen"
3. Move the controller until the split screen is selected.
4. Press the controller or select "Split screen content".
5. Select the desired menu item.



Programmable memory buttons

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, e.g., radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries.

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

Saving a function

1. Highlight the function via the iDrive.
2. ... Press and hold the desired button, until a signal sounds.

Running a function

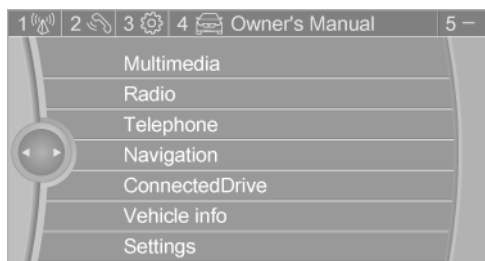
1. ... Press button.

The function will work immediately. This means, e.g., that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying the button assignment

Touch buttons with bare fingers. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The key assignment is displayed at top edge of screen.



Deleting the button assignments

1. Press buttons 1 and 8 simultaneously for approx. five seconds.
2. "OK"

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

The concept

Depending on the usage, the vehicle saves personal data, such as stored radio stations. These personal data can be permanently deleted through iDrive.

General information

Depending on the equipment package, the following data can be deleted:

- ▷ Personal Profile settings.
- ▷ Stored radio stations.
- ▷ Stored Favorites buttons.
- ▷ Travel and computer information.
- ▷ Music collection.

- Navigation, e.g. stored destinations.
- Phone book.
- Online data, e.g. Favorites, cookies.
- Voice notes.
- Login accounts.
- RemoteApp smartphone tethering.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 30 minutes.

Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

Deleting data

Heed and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. "Settings"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete personal data"
5. "Continue"
6. "OK"

Entering letters and numbers

General information

On the Control Display:

1. Turn the controller: select letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers if needed.
3. "OK": confirm the entry.

Symbol	Function
	Press the controller: delete the letter or number.
	Press the controller for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers.

Switching between cases, letters and numbers

Depending on the menu, you can reel between entering upper and lower case, letters and numbers:

Symbol	Function
A^BC	Enter the letters.
1@+	Enter the numbers.
abc or ABC	Tip controller up.

Without navigation system

@^A A^a a[@] Select the symbol.

Entry comparison

Entering names and addresses: choice is narrowed down with every letter entered and letters may be added automatically.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- Only those letters are offered during input for which data is available.
- Target search: names of locations may be entered in languages available through Control Display.

Voice activation system

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

The concept

- ▷ Most functions displayed on the Control Display can be operated by voice commands via the voice activation system. The system supports you with announcements during input.
- ▷ Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary cannot be used via the voice activation system.
- ▷ The system uses a special microphone on the driver's side.
- ▷ ›...‹ Verbal instructions in the Owner's Manual to use with the voice activation system.

Requirements

Via the Control Display, set a language that is also supported by the voice activation system so that the spoken commands can be identified.

Set the language, refer to page 98.

Using voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1.  Press button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

A command that is recognized by the voice activation system is announced and displayed in the instrument cluster.

 This symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice activation system is active. If no other commands are available, use function via iDrive.

Terminating the voice activation system

 Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

Possible commands

Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands.

The available commands depend on the menu that is currently displayed on the Control Display.

There are short commands for many functions.

You may select lists such as phone lists via voice activation. Read these lists out loud exactly as they show in the respective list.

Having possible commands read aloud

You can have available commands read out loud for you: ›Voice commands‹

E. g. if the "Settings" menu is displayed, the commands for the settings are read out loud.

Executing functions using short commands

Execute functions on the main menu via short commands. It almost doesn't matter which menu item is selected, e.g., ›Vehicle status‹.

List of short commands for the voice activation system, see Navigation, Entertainment, Communication Owner's Manual.

Help dialog for the voice activation system

Calling up help dialog: ›Help‹

Additional commands for the help dialog:

- ›Help with examples‹: announces information about the current operating options and the most important commands for them.
- ›Help with voice activation‹: information about the principle of operation for the voice activation system is announced.

One example: open the tone settings

Via the main menu

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the controller.

1. Turn on the Entertainment sound output if needed.
2.  Press button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Radio‹
4. ›Tone‹

Via short command

The desired tone settings can also be started via a short command.

1. Turn on the Entertainment sound output if needed.

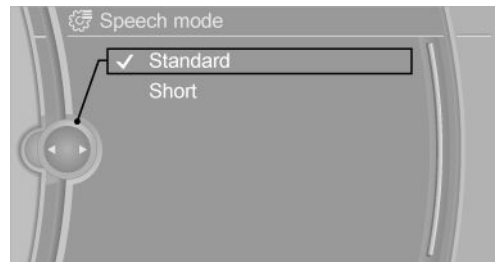
2.  Press button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Tone‹

Setting the voice dialog

Set system to standard dialog or use a short version.

The short version of the voice dialog plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech type:"
4. Select setting.



Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button while giving an instruction until the desired volume is set.

- The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- The volume is stored for the profile currently in use.

Hints on Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change.

This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a phone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button, refer to page 220, close to the interior mirror.

Environmental conditions

- ▷ Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- ▷ Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.
- ▷ Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed to prevent noise interference.
- ▷ Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display. It specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.

Components of the Integrated Owner's Manual

The Integrated Owner's Manual consists of three parts, which offer various levels of information or possible access.

Quick Reference Guide

The Quick Reference Guide provides information how to operate the car, how to use basic vehicle functions or what to do in case of a breakdown. This information can also be displayed while driving.

Search by images

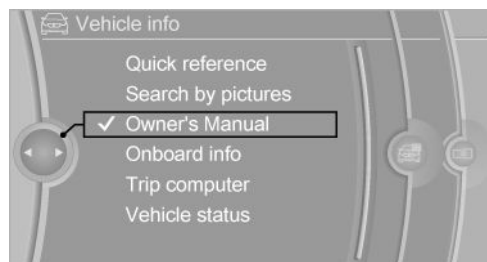
Image search provides information and descriptions. This is helpful when the terminology for a feature is not at hand.

Owner's Manual

Search for information and descriptions by entering terms selected from the index.

Select components

1.  Press button.
2. Turn the controller: open "Vehicle info".
3. Press the controller.
4. Selecting desired range:
 - ▷ "Quick reference"
 - ▷ "Search by pictures"
 - ▷ "Owner's Manual"



Leafing through the Owner's Manual

Page by page with link access

Turn the controller until the next or previous page is displayed.

Page by page without link access

Scroll through the pages directly while skipping the links.

Highlight the symbol once. Now simply press the controller to browse from page to page.



Scroll back.



Scroll forward.

Context help - Owner's Manual to the temporarily selected function

You may open the relevant information directly.

Opening via the iDrive

To move directly from the application on the Control Display to the Options menu:

-  Press button or move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
- "Display Owner's Manual"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Display Owner's Manual"

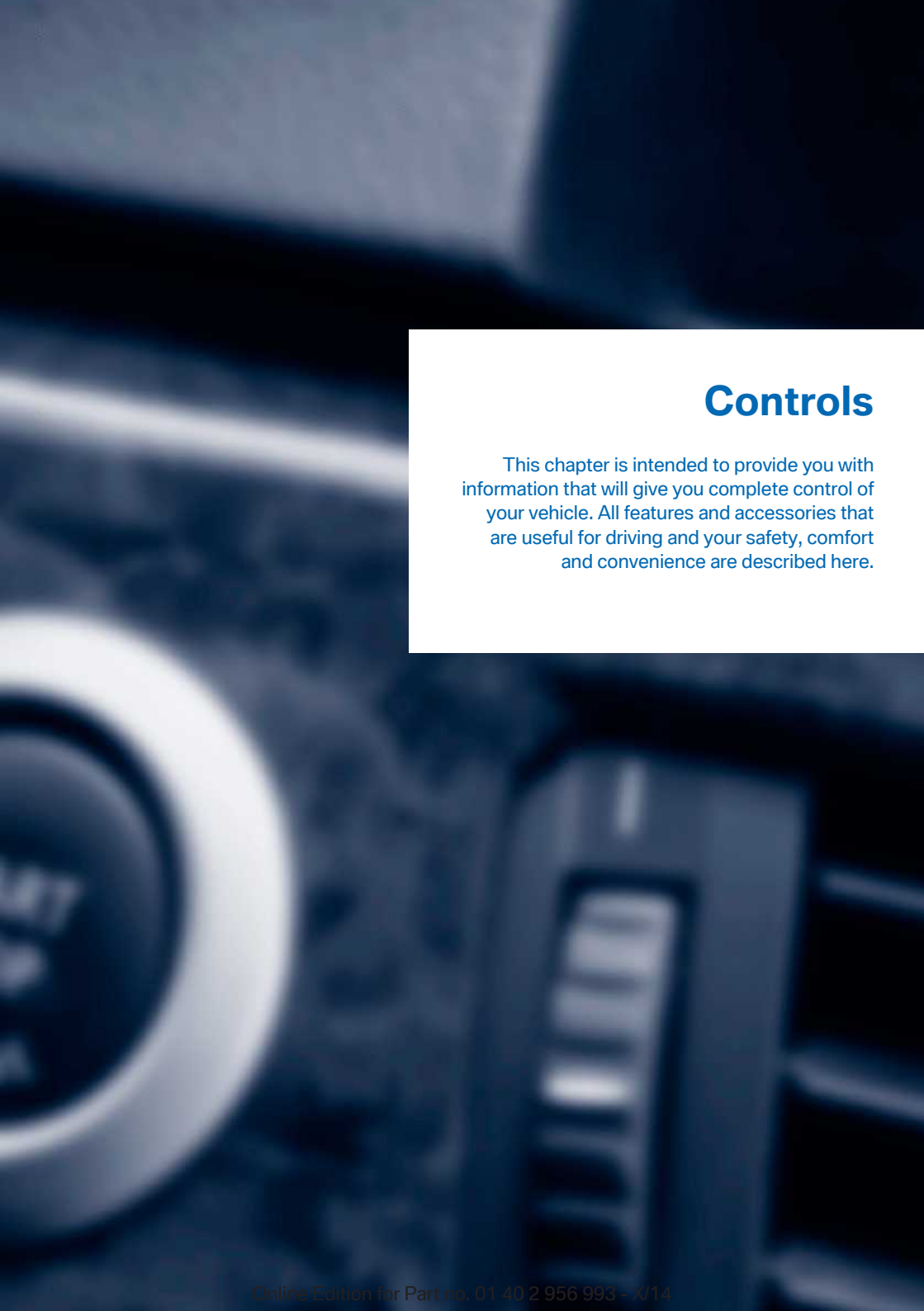
Changing between a function and the Owner's Manual

To reel from a function, e. g., radio, to the Owner's Manual on the Control Display and to alternate between the two displays:

-  Press button or move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
- "Display Owner's Manual"
- Select the desired page in the Owner's Manual.
-  Press button again to return to last displayed function.
-  Press button to return to the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last.

To alternate permanently between the last displayed function and the Owner's Manual repeat steps 4 & 5. Opens a new display every time.





Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information that will give you complete control of your vehicle. All features and accessories that are useful for driving and your safety, comfort and convenience are described here.

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Remote control/key

General information

The vehicle is supplied with two remote controls with integrated key.

Every remote control holds a replaceable battery.

You may set the key functions depending on the optional features and country-specific version. For Settings, refer to page 45.

The vehicle stores personal settings for every remote control. Personal Profile, refer to page 35.

The remote controls hold information on required maintenance. Service data in the remote control, refer to page 211.

At a glance

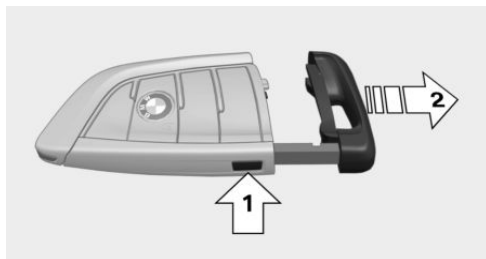


- 1 Unlocking
- 2 Locking

3 Opening the tailgate

4 Panic mode

Integrated key

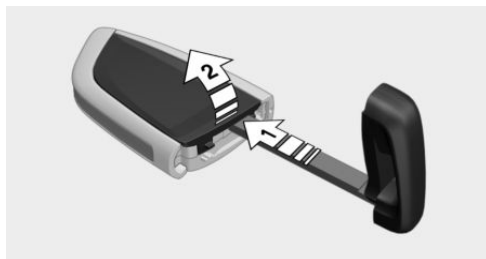


Press button, arrow 1, and remove the key, arrow 2.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- ▷ Driver's door.
- ▷ Glove compartment on the front passenger side.

Replacing the battery



1. Remove integrated key from remote control.
2. Push in the catch with the key, arrow 1.
3. Remove the cover of the battery compartment, arrow 2.
4. Insert a battery of the same type with the positive side facing up.
5. Press the cover closed.



Take the used battery to a recycling center or to your service center.

New remote controls

New remote controls are available from the service center.

Loss of the remote controls

Lost remote controls can be disabled by your service center.

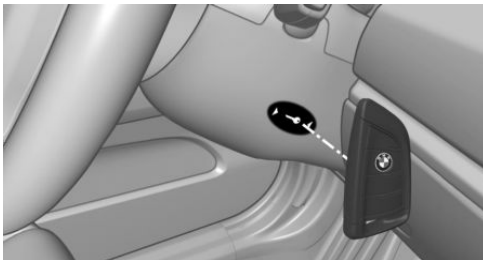
Emergency detection of remote control

It is possible to reel on the ignition or start the engine in situations such as the following:

- ▷ Interference of radio transmission to remote control by external sources e.g., by radio masts.
- ▷ Empty battery in remote control.
- ▷ Interference from radio transmissions through mobile devices in close proximity to remote control.
- ▷ Interference of radio transmission by charger while charging items such as mobile devices in the vehicle.

A Check Control message is displayed if an attempt is made to reel on the ignition or start the engine.

Starting the engine via emergency detection of the remote control



If a respective Check Control message appears, hold the remote control with its back against the marked area on the steering col-

umn. The tailgate button on the remote control should be at the same height as the marked area. Press the Start/Stop button within 10 seconds while pressing the brake pedal.

If the remote control is not recognized: slightly change the height position of the remote control and repeat the procedure.

Personal Profile

The concept

Individual settings in the vehicle are saved in personal profiles. Every remote control is assigned the last active profile.

Three personal profiles and a guest profile can be created.

- ▷ Changes to the settings are automatically saved in the profile currently activated.
- ▷ Unlocking the car activates the profile that is stored in the remote control.
- ▷ Your personal settings will be recognized and activated even if the vehicle had been operated with another remote control.

Adjusting

The settings for the following systems and functions are saved in the active profile. The scope of storable settings is country- and equipment-dependable.

- ▷ Unlocking and locking.
- ▷ Lights.
- ▷ Climate control.
- ▷ Radio.
- ▷ Instrument cluster.
- ▷ Programmable memory buttons.
- ▷ Volumes, tone.
- ▷ Control Display.
- ▷ Navigation.
- ▷ Park Distance Control PDC.
- ▷ Rearview camera

- ▷ Side View.
- ▷ Head-up Display.
- ▷ M Drive: configurations.
- ▷ Intelligent Safety.
- ▷ Active Blind Spot Detection.
- ▷ Night vision.

Profile management

Opening profiles

Regardless of the remote control in use a different profile may be activated.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Select a profile.

The activated profile is assigned to the currently used remote control.

Renaming profiles

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Options"
4. "Rename current profile"

Resetting profiles

The settings of the active profile are reset to their default values.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Options"
4. "Reset current profile"

Exporting profiles

Most settings of the active profile and the saved contacts can be exported.

This can be helpful for securing and retrieving personal settings, before delivering the vehicle to a workshop, e.g. Profiles can be taken to another vehicle equipped with the Personal Profile function.

The following export options are available:

- ▷ Via BMW Online.
- ▷ Via the USB port to a USB device.

Popular file systems for USB devices are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats for profile export.

Other formats may not support the export.

Export is made via the USB port to a USB device. Popular file systems for USB devices are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats for profile export. Other formats may not support the export.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Export profile"
4. BMW Online: "BMW Online"
USB port: "USB device"

Importing profiles

Profiles exported via BMW Online can also be imported via BMW Online.

Profiles stored on a USB device can be imported via the USB interface.

Existing settings and contacts are overwritten with the imported profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Import profile"
4. BMW Online: "BMW Online"
USB interface: "USB device"

Using the guest profile

The guest profile is for individual settings that are saved in none of the three personal profiles.

This can be useful for drivers who are using the vehicle temporarily and do not have their own profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"

3. "Guest"

The guest profile cannot be renamed. It is not assigned to the current remote control.

Display profile list during start

The profile list can be displayed during each start to select the desired profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Options"
4. "Display user list at startup"

Using the remote control

Note

 Take the remote control with you. People or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside. ◀

Unlocking

 Press button on the remote control.

- All doors and the tailgate are unlocked.
- Interior lamps and courtesy lamps are activated. This function is not available, if the interior lamps were switched off manually.
- The welcome lamps are switched on, if this function was activated.
- Exterior mirrors folded through convenient closing are folded open.

You can set how the vehicle is to be unlocked. For Settings, refer to page 45.

The alarm system, refer to page 46, is disarmed.

Convenient opening



Press and hold this button on the remote control after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

Locking



Locking from the outside

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside with people inside the car, as the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge. ◀



Press button on the remote control.

All doors and the tailgate are locked.

The alarm system, refer to page 46, is armed.

Switching on interior lights and courtesy lights



Press button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

This function is not available, if the interior lamps were switched off manually.

If the button is pressed again within 10 seconds after vehicle was locked, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor of the anti-theft warning system, refer to page 47, are turned off. After locking, wait 10 seconds before pressing the button again.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.



Press button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To reel off the alarm: press any button.

Opening the tailgate



Note the opening height of the tailgate

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance when the tailgate opens; otherwise, damage may result. ◀



Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

The closed tailgate opens automatically, regardless of whether the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Depending on the features and the country version, it is also possible to have door unlocked. Create the settings, refer to page 45.

The tailgate cannot be opened with the remote control while a trailer is being towed.

If the doors were not unlocked, the tailgate is locked again as soon as it closes.



Do not place the remote control in the cargo area

Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control is locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed. ◀



Provide edge protection

Sharp objects or those with edges can hit the rear window while driving and damage the heat conductors of the rear window. Provide edge protection. ◀

Malfunction

Remote control detection by the vehicle can among others be malfunctioning under the following circumstances:

- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmit power.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.

- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.

Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside without remote control, refer to page 39.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

- ▷ LX8766S.
- ▷ LX8766E.
- ▷ LX8CAS.
- ▷ LX8CAS2.
- ▷ MYTCAS4.

Compliance statement:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- ▷ This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- ▷ this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Without remote control

From the outside



Locking from the outside

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside with people inside the car, as the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge. ◀



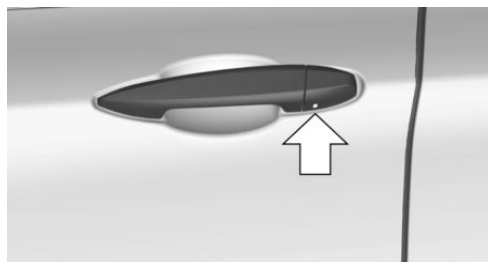
Remove the key before pulling the door handle

Before pulling the outside door handle, remove the key to avoid damaging the paintwork and the key. ◀

Unlock or lock the driver's door via the door lock using the integrated key, refer to page 34. The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

1. Remove lid on the door lock.

To do this, slide the integrated key into the opening from below and unlock the lid.



2. Unlock or lock door lock.

Alarm system

The alarm system is not armed if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle was unlocked via the door lock.

In order to terminate this alarm, unlock vehicle with the remote control or reel on the ignition, if needed, through emergency detection of the remote control, refer to page 35.

From the inside

Unlocking and locking



Via the buttons for the central locking system.

- ▶  By pressing the button, the vehicle is locked with the doors closed.
- ▶  Pressing the button unlocks the vehicle.

The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Unlocking and opening

- ▶  Press the central locking system button to unlock the doors together, and then pull the door handle above the armrest.
- ▶ Front doors: pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- ▶ Back doors: pull twice on the door handle on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

Doors

Automatic Soft Closing

To close the doors, push lightly.

It is closed automatically.



Danger of jamming

Make sure that the closing path of the doors is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀

Tailgate

Automatic tailgate operation

Adjusting the opening height

You can set how far the tailgate should open.



Adjusting the opening height

When adjusting the opening height, ensure that there is a clearance of at least 4 in/10 cm above the tailgate. Otherwise, the ceiling may not be high enough for the open tailgate if the loading situation changes. ◀

1. "Settings"
2. "Tailgate"
3. Turn the controller until the desired opening height is selected.

Opening



Note the opening height of the tailgate

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance when the tailgate opens; otherwise, damage may result.

Adjust the opening height of the tailgate according to the given situation. ◀

BMW X5 M:



BMW X6 M:



- ▶ Press button on tailgate's exterior
- ▶  Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

As the case may be, the doors are also unlocked. Opening with the remote control, refer to page 38.

The tailgate cannot be opened with the remote control while a trailer is being towed.

- ▶  Press button in the driver's door.
- The tailgate cannot be opened with the remote control while the driver's door is opened.

If the vehicle is stationary, the tailgate opens automatically to the adjusted opening height.

The opening procedure is interrupted:

- ▶ By pressing a button again.
- ▶ When starting the engine.
- ▶ When the vehicle starts moving.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate.

Closing

 Keep the closing path clear
Make sure that the closing path of the tailgate is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀

 Monitor closing
Monitor closing to ensure that no one becomes trapped. ◀

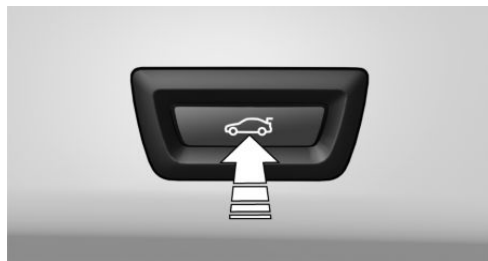
 Do not place the remote control in the cargo area

Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control is locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed. ◀

 Provide edge protection
Sharp objects or those with edges can hit the rear window while driving and damage the heat conductors of the rear window. Provide edge protection. ◀

BMW X5 M: The lower tailgate must be closed; otherwise, a Check Control message will appear.

Without Comfort Access:



▶ Press button on the inside of the tailgate.

With Comfort Access:



▶ Press button, arrow 1, on the inside of the tailgate.

Pressing the button again stops the motion.

▶ Press button, arrow 2.

The vehicle will be locked after closing the tailgate. The driver's door must be closed for this purpose and the remote control must be outside of the vehicle in the area of the tailgate.

Pressing the button again stops the motion.

BMW X5 M:



BMW X6 M:



- ▷ Press button on tailgate's exterior
Pressing the button again stops the motion.
- ▷  Pull and hold the button in the driver door. Releasing the button stops window/roof movement.
The remote control must be located in the interior for this function.

An acoustic signal sounds and the tailgate closes.

The closing operation is interrupted:

- ▷ When starting the engine.
- ▷ The vehicle starts off with jerks.

Manual operation

 Do not operate the tailgate manually if it is blocked

If the tailgate is blocked, do not operate it manually as the tailgate may otherwise become damaged and injury may result.

Contact your service center. ◀

In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked tailgate manually with a slow and smooth motion.

BMW X5 M: Manually unlocking the tailgate, refer to page 42.

BMW X5 M: manual unlocking

When there is an electrical malfunction.

1. Fold the rear seat backrest forward.
2. In the lower tailgate, loosen and remove the cover using the onboard tool kit or a suitable object.

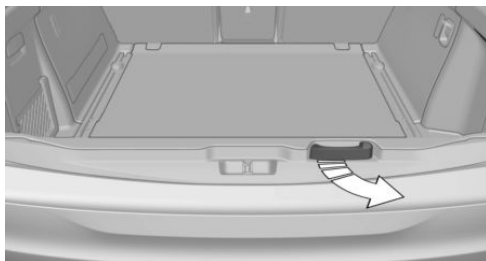


3. Pull the loop in the direction of the interior.
The tailgate is unlocked.
4. The top tailgate opens, press the loop back in.
5. Insert and close the cover.

The tailgate is locked again as soon as it is closed.

BMW X5 M: lower tailgate

Opening



Pull the lever and swing down the tailgate.

The open tailgate can be loaded with up to 550 lbs/250 kg.

Closing

Swing up the tailgate, and press it closed.

Comfort Access

The concept

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.

All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, such as in your pants pocket.

The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

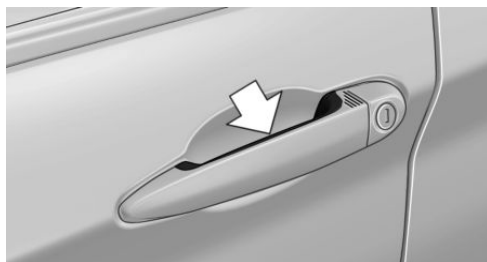
Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking/locking of the vehicle.
- Convenient closing.
- Opening the tailgate individually
- Open/close tailgate with no-touch activation.
- Start the engine.

Functional requirements

- There are no external sources of interference nearby.
- To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle.
- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
- The engine can only be started if the remote control is in the vehicle.

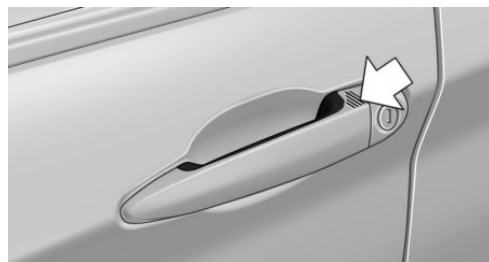
Unlocking



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely, arrow.

This corresponds with pressing the button on the remote control. 

Locking



Touch the surface on the handle of a vehicle door, arrow, with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

This corresponds with pressing the button on the remote control. 

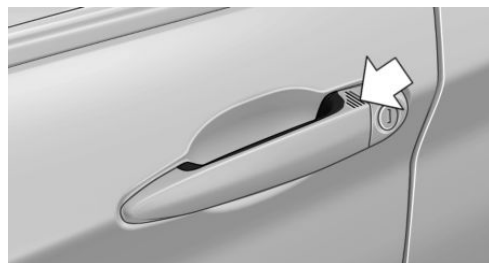
To save battery power, ensure that the ignition and all electronic systems and/or power consumers are turned off before locking the vehicle.

Convenient closing



Monitor closing

Monitor closing to ensure that no one becomes trapped. ◀



Touch the surface on the handle of a vehicle door, arrow, with your finger and hold it there without grasping the door handle.

This corresponds to pressing and holding  the remote control button.

In addition to locking, the windows and the glass sunroof close and the exterior mirrors fold in.

Unlocking the tailgate separately

Press button on tailgate's exterior

This corresponds with pressing the button on the remote control. 

The situation of the doors does not change.



Note the opening height of the tailgate

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance when the tailgate opens; otherwise, damage may result. ◀



Do not place the remote control in the cargo area

Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control is locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed. ◀

BMW X6 M: opening and closing the tailgate with no-touch activation

With Comfort Access, the tailgate can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the remote control you are carrying.

Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot motion in the center of the area at the rear of the car and the tailgate opens.

Foot movement to be carried out



Do not touch vehicle

With the foot motion, make sure there is steady stance and do not touch the vehicle; otherwise, there is a danger of injury, e. g. from hot exhaust system parts. ◀

1. Place in the center behind the vehicle, about an arm's length from the vehicle rear.
2. Move a foot in the direction of travel as far under the vehicle as possible and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the

leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Opening

The tailgate opens, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening.

Before the opening, the hazard warning system flashes.



Preventing inadvertent opening

In situations where the tailgate should not be opened with no-touch activation, ensure that the remote control is located beyond the range of the sensor, at least 5 ft/1.50 m from the rear of the car.

Otherwise, the tailgate may be opened inadvertently, for example by an unintentional or misinterpreted movement of the foot. ◀

Closing

The hazard warning system flashes on and an acoustic signal sounds before the tailgate closes.

When closing, the tailgate pivots back and down.

The closing of the tailgate has no effect on the locking of the vehicle.

Another foot movement can interrupt the closing operation.



Avoiding unintentional closing

In situations in which the opened tailgate should not to be closed with no-touch activation, ensure that the remote control is located beyond the range of the sensor, at least 5 ft/1.50 m from the rear of the car.

Otherwise, the tailgate may be closed inadvertently, for example by an unintentional or misinterpreted movement of the foot. ◀



Keep the closing path clear

Make sure that the closing path of the tailgate is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀



Do not place the remote control in the cargo area

Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control is locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed. ◀

Malfunction

Remote control detection by the vehicle can among others be malfunctioning under the following circumstances:

- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmit power.
- Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.

Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the remote control or using the integrated key, refer to page 39.

Adjusting

Unlocking

The settings are saved in the active profile, refer to page 35.

Doors

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3.  Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired function:

- "Driver's door only"

Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.

- "All doors"

The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Tailgate

Depending on optional features and country version, this setting is not offered in some cases.

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3.  Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired function:

- "Tailgate"

The tailgate is opened.

- "Tailgate + door(s)"

The tailgate is opened and the doors unlocked.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

The settings are saved in the active profile, refer to page 35.

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals.

- ▷ "Acoustic sig. lock/unlock"
- ▷ "Flash when lock/unlock"

Automatic locking

The settings are saved in the active profile, refer to page 35.

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select the desired function:
 - ▷ "Lock if no door is opened"

The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened.
 - ▷ "Lock after start driving"

The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

Retrieving the seat, mirror, and steering wheel settings

The driver's seat, exterior mirror, and steering wheel position adjusted last will be stored for the active profile.

When the vehicle is unlocked, these positions are automatically retrieved if this function was activated.



Pinch hazard when moving back the seat

If this function is used, first make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is empty. Otherwise, people might get injured or objects damaged when the seat is moved back. ◀

The adjustment procedure is interrupted:

- ▷ When a seat position reel is pressed.
- ▷ When a button of the seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory is pressed briefly.

Activating the setting

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. "Last seat position autom."

Alarm system

The concept

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system responds to:

- ▷ Opening a door, the hood or the tailgate.
- ▷ Movements in the interior.
- ▷ Changes in the vehicle tilt, e. g., during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the car.
- ▷ Disconnected battery voltage.

The alarm system briefly signals tampering:

- ▷ By sounding an acoustic alarm.
- ▷ By switching on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ By flashing the daytime running lights.

Arming and disarming the alarm system

When you unlock or lock the vehicle, either with the remote control or via the Comfort Access, the alarm system is disarmed or armed at the same time.

Door lock and armed alarm system

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, when the vehicle is unlocked via the door lock.

Tailgate and armed alarm system

The tailgate can be opened even when the alarm system is armed.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again when the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

Panic mode

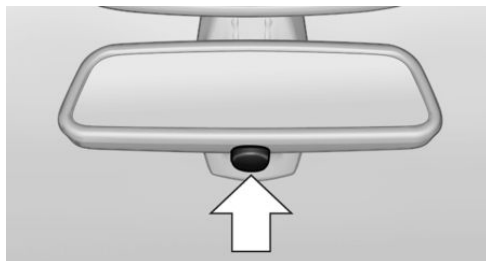
You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.



Press button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To reel off the alarm: press any button.

Indicator lamp on the interior rearview mirror



- ▶ The indicator lamp flashes briefly every 2 seconds:
The system is armed.
- ▶ The indicator lamp flashes after locking:
The doors, hood or tailgate is not closed properly, but the rest of the vehicle is secured.
After 10 seconds, the indicator lamp flashes continuously. Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active.
When the still open access is closed, interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.
- ▶ The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking:
The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- ▶ The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the engine ignition is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:
An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the car is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The windows and glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can be switched off together, such as in the following situations:

- ▶ In automatic car washes.
- ▶ In duplex garages.
- ▶ During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- ▶ With animals in the vehicle.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor



Press the remote control button again within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are turned off, until the vehicle is locked again.

Switching off the alarm

- ▶ Unlock vehicle with the remote control or reel on the ignition, if needed through emergency detection of remote control, refer to page 35.
- ▶ With Comfort Access: If you are carrying the remote control on your person, grasp the driver side or front passenger side door handle completely.

Power windows

General information



Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, e.g., cannot operate the power windows and injure themselves. ◀



Opening



- ▷ Press the button to the resistance point.

The window opens while the reel is held.



- ▷ Press the reel beyond the resistance point.

The window opens automatically. Pressing the reel again stops the motion.

See also: Convenient opening, refer to page 37, via remote control.

Closing



Keep the closing path clear

Monitor closing and make sure that the closing path of the window is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀



- ▷ Pull the reel to the resistance point.
The window closes while the reel is held.



- ▷ Pull the reel beyond the resistance point.

The window closes automatically. Pulling again stops the motion.

See also: closing by means of Comfort Access, refer to page 43.

Pinch protection system



Danger of jamming even with pinch protection

Even with the pinch protection system, check that the window's closing path is clear; otherwise, the closing action may not stop in certain situations, e.g., if thin objects are present. ◀



No window accessories

Do not install any accessories in the window's range of movement; otherwise, the pinch protection system will be impaired. ◀

If closing force exceeds a specific margin as a window closes, closing is interrupted.

The window reopens slightly.

Closing without the pinch protection system



Keep the closing path clear

Monitor closing and make sure that the closing path of the window is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀

E.g. danger from the outside or ice might prevent window from closing properly - proceed as follows:

1. Pull the reel past the resistance point and hold it there.

The pinch protection is limited and the window reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain margin.

2. Pull the reel past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

The window closes without jam protection.

Safety reel

General information

The safety reel in the driver's door can be used to prevent children, e.g., from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

Switching on and off



Press button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.



Safety reel for rear operation

Press the safety reel when transporting children in the rear; otherwise, injury may result if the windows are closed without supervision. ◀

Roller sunblinds

Roller sunblinds for the rear side windows

Pull out the roller sunblind at the loop and hook it onto the bracket.



Do not open the window while the roller sunblind is tilted

Do not open the window while the roller sunblind is tilted; otherwise, there is a risk of damage at high speeds that may result in personal injury. ◀

Glass sunroof

General information

BMW X5 M: panoramic glass sunroof.

BMW X6 M: glass sunroof, powered.

The glass sunroof and the sliding visor can be operated together or separately, using the same reel.

The glass sunroof is operational when the ignition is switched on.



Keep the closing path clear

Monitor closing and make sure that the closing path of the glass sunroof is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀



Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, e.g., cannot operate the glass sunroof and injure themselves. ◀



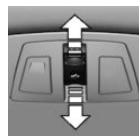
Tilting the glass sunroof



Push switch briefly upward.

- ▷ The closed glass sunroof is tilted and the sliding visor opens slightly.
- ▷ The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in its tilted position. The sliding visor does not move.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sliding visor separately



- ▷ Press the reel in the desired direction to the resistance point and hold it there.

The sliding visor opens, as long as the reel is held down. If the sliding visor is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens.

The glass sunroof closes as long as the reel is held down. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sliding visor closes.

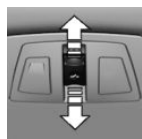
- Press the reel in the desired direction past the resistance point.

The sliding visor opens automatically. If the sliding visor is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sliding visor closes automatically.

Pressing the reel upward stops the motion.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sliding visor together



Briefly press the reel twice in succession in the desired direction past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sliding visor move together. Pressing the reel upward stops the motion.

- See also: Convenient opening, refer to page 37, via remote control.
- See also: closing by means of Comfort Access, refer to page 43.

Comfort position

If the glass sunroof is not automatically completely opened, the comfort position has been attained. In this position the wind noises in the interior are the least.

If desired, continue the movement by pressing the reel.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force when closing the glass sunroof exceeds a certain value, the closing movement is stopped, beginning at approximately

the middle of the opening in the roof, or from the tilted position during closing.

The glass sunroof reopens slightly.



Danger of jamming even with pinch protection

Despite the pinch protection system, check that the glass sunroof's closing path is clear; otherwise, the closing action may not be interrupted in certain extreme situations, such as when thin objects are present. ◀

Closing from the open position without pinch protection

E. g. if there is an external danger, proceed as follows:

1. Press the reel forward beyond the resistance point and hold.

The pinch protection is limited and the glass sunroof reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain margin.

2. Press the reel forward again beyond the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Closing from the raised position without pinch protection

If there is an external danger, push the reel forward past the resistance point and hold it.

The glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

Initializing after a power failure

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent.

Initializing the system

The system can be initialized when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.

During the initialization, the glass sunroof closes without jam protection.



Keep the closing path clear

Monitor closing and make sure that the closing path of the glass sunroof is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀



Press the reel up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

- ▶ Initialization begins within 15 seconds and is completed when the glass sunroof and sliding visor are completely closed.
- ▶ The glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

Adjusting

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Sitting safely

The ideal seating position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

The seating position plays an important role in an accident in combination with:

- ▷ Safety belts, refer to page 55.
- ▷ Head restraints, refer to page 56.
- ▷ Airbags, refer to page 106.

Front seats

Hints



Do not adjust the seat while driving. Do not adjust the driver's seat while driving, or the seat could respond with unexpected movement and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident. ◀



Do not incline the backrest too far to the rear

Also on the front passenger side, do not incline the backrest on the front passenger side too far to the rear while driving, or there is a risk of slipping under the safety belt in the event of an accident. This would eliminate the protection normally provided by the belt. ◀

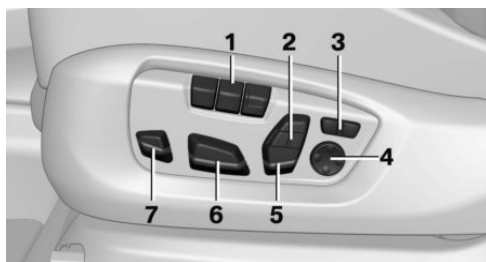


Keep the movement area unobstructed

When changing the seat position, keep the seat's area of movement unobstructed; otherwise, people might get injured or objects damaged. ◀

Electrically adjustable seats

At a glance



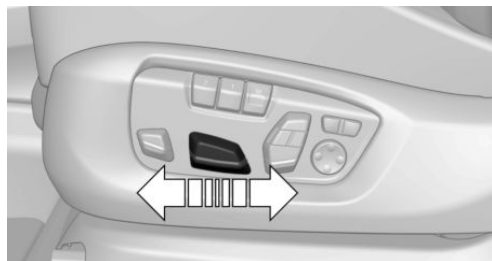
- 1 Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory
- 2 Shoulder support
- 3 Backrest width
- 4 Lumbar support
- 5 Backrest, head restraint
- 6 Forward/back, height, tilt
- 7 Thigh support

General information

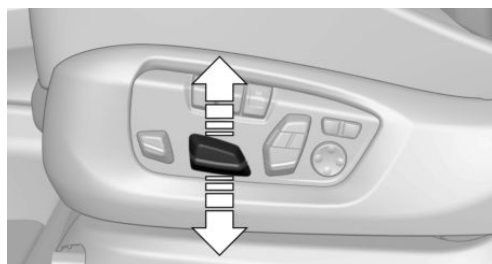
The seat setting for the driver's seat is stored for the profile currently in use. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if the Function, refer to page 46, is activated for this purpose.

Adjustments in detail

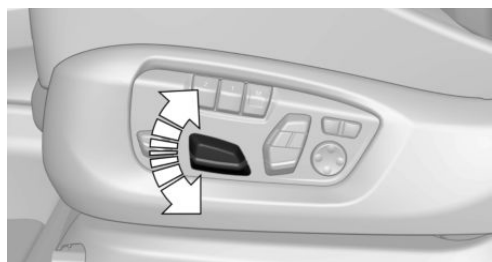
1. Forward/backward



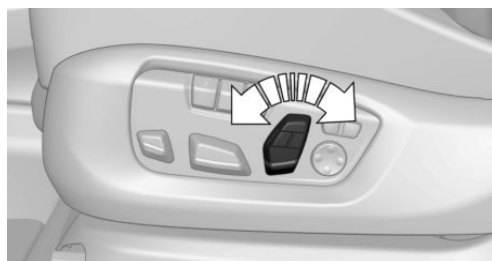
2. Height



3. Seat tilt

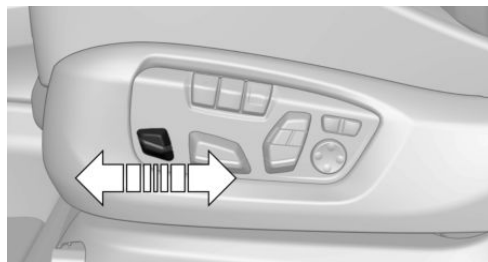


4. Backrest tilt



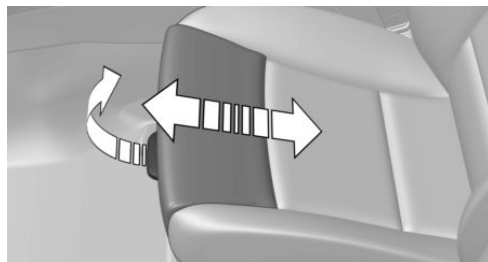
Thigh support

Multifunctional seat



Adjust the position using the lever.

Sport seat



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support.

Lumbar support

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.



- ▶ Press the front/rear section of the reel.
The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▶ Press the upper/lower section of the reel.
The curvature is shifted up/down.

Backrest width



Change the width of the backrest using the side wings to adjust the lateral support.

To make it easier to enter and exit the vehicle, the backrest width temporarily opens fully.

Shoulder support



Also supports the back in the shoulder area:

- ▷ Results in a relaxed seating position.
- ▷ Reduces strain on the shoulder muscles.

Front seat heating



Switching on



Press button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

If the journey is continued within approx. 15 minutes, the seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

Switch off



Press button longer.
The LEDs go out.

Temperature distribution

The heating action in the seat cushion and backrest can be distributed in different ways.

On the Control Display:

1. "Climate"
2. "Front seat heating"
3. Select the required seat.
4. Turn the controller to set the temperature distribution.

Active seat ventilation, front

The seat cushion and backrest surfaces are cooled by means of integrated fans.

The ventilation cools the seat, e. g., if the vehicle interior is overheated or for continuous cooling at high temperatures.



Switching on



Press button once for each ventilation level.

The highest level is active when three LEDs are lit.

After a short time, the system automatically moves down one level in order to prevent excessive cooling.

Switch off



Press button longer.

The LEDs go out.

Rear seats

Second row of seats

Hints



Center armrest

When folding down the center armrest, ensure that the area below the center head restraint is clear. Otherwise, injury may result. ◀

Rear seat heating



Switching on



Press button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

If the journey is continued within approx. 15 minutes, the seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

Switch off



Press button longer.

The LEDs go out.

Safety belts

Seats with safety belt

The vehicle has five seats, each of which is equipped with a safety belt.

General information

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by all occupants before driving off.

For the occupants' safety the belt locking mechanism triggers early. Slowly guide the belt out of the holder when applying it.

Although airbags enhance safety by providing added protection, they are not a substitute for safety belts.

The upper shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.

- ▷ The two outer safety belt buckles, integrated into the rear seat, are for passengers sitting on the left and right.
- ▷ The center rear safety belt buckle is solely intended for the center passenger.

Hints



One person per safety belt

Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride on a passenger's lap. ◀



Putting on the belt

Lay the belt, without twisting, snugly across the lap and shoulders, as close to the body as possible. Make sure that the belt lies low around the hips in the lap area and does not press on the abdomen. Otherwise, the belt can slip over the hips in a frontal impact and injure the abdomen.

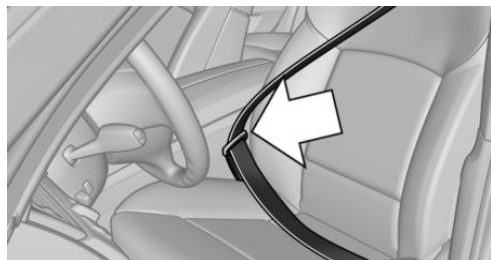
The safety belt must not lie across the neck, rub on sharp edges, be routed over breakable objects, or be pinched. ◀



What reduces the restraining effect

Avoid wearing bulky clothing, and pull the shoulder belt periodically to readjust the tension. Make sure that the belt is not jammed; otherwise, the belt can be damaged and the restraining effect is reduced. ◀

Buckling the belt



Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

To ease accessibility to the seat belt buckle, an adjustable slider is available on the belt to help position the buckle when not in use.

Tensioning the safety belt automatically

When the belt is closed, it is automatically tightened once after the release.

Unbuckling the belt

1. Hold the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Guide the belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

Safety belt reminder for driver's and passenger's seat



The indicator lamp lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder is active at speeds above approx. 6 mph/10 km/h. It can also be activated

if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Safety mode

In critical situations, e.g., during full brake application, the front safety belts tighten automatically.

If the situation passes without an accident occurring, the belt tension relaxes.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the belt using the red button in the buckle. Fasten the belt before continuing on your trip.

Damage to safety belts

Wear and tear after accidents or when damaged otherwise:

Have the safety belts, including the safety belt tensioners, replaced and have the belt anchors checked.



Check and replace safety belts

This should only be done by your service center; otherwise, this safety feature might not work properly. ◀

Front head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

Adjust the headrest via the backrest tilt as needed.



Adjusting the head restraint

Adjust the head restraints of all occupied seats properly; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident. ◀

Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

Distance

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Active head restraint

In the event of a rear-end collision with a certain severity, the active head restraint automatically reduces the distance from the head.



Reduced protective function

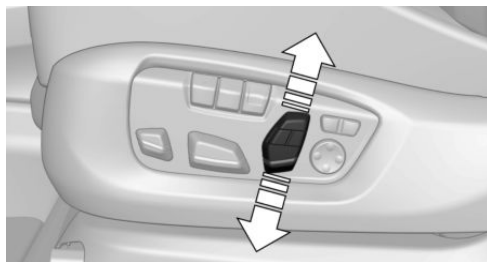
- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, e.g., clothes hangers, on the head restraints.
- ▷ Only attach accessories approved by BMW to the seat or head restraint.

Otherwise, the protective function of the active head restraint will be impaired and the personal safety of the occupants will be endangered. ◀

Wear and tear after accidents or when damaged otherwise:

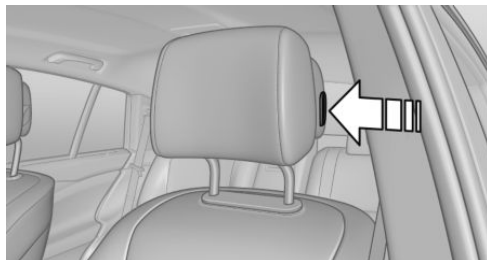
Have the active headrest checked and if needed replaced.

Adjusting the height



Adjusting electrically.

Distance to the back of the head: basic seat



- ▷ Forward: by pulling.
- ▷ Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.

Distance to the back of the head: M multifunctional seat

The head restraint is automatically repositioned when the shoulder support is adjusted.

Removing

The head restraints cannot be removed.

BMW X5 M: rear head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.



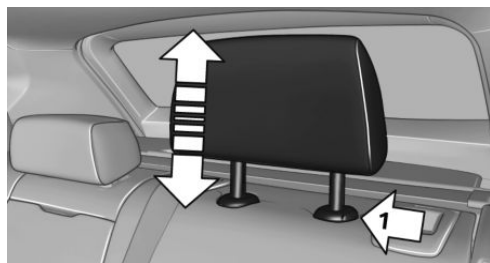
Adjusting the head restraint

Adjust the head restraints of all occupied seats properly; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident. ◀

Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

Adjusting the height

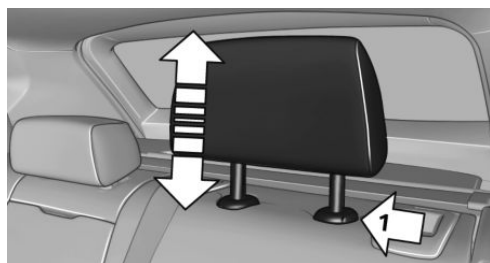


- ▷ To raise: push.
- ▷ To lower: press button, arrow 1, and push headrest down.

The center head restraint cannot be adjusted in elevation.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

The center head restraint cannot be removed.



Before transporting passengers

Reinstall the head restraint before transporting anyone in the seat; otherwise, the protective function of the head restraint is unavailable.◀

Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory

The concept

Two driver's seat and exterior mirror positions can be stored per profile, refer to page 35, and called up. Settings for the backrest width and lumbar support are not stored in memory.

Hints



Do not retrieve the memory while driving

Do not retrieve the memory setting while driving, as an unexpected movement of the seat or steering wheel could result in an accident.◀



Keep the movement area unobstructed

When changing the seat position, keep the seat's area of movement unobstructed; otherwise, people might get injured or objects damaged.◀

At a glance



Storing

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Set the desired position.
3.  Press button. The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press selected button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. The LED goes out.

If the SET button is pressed accidentally:

SET

Press button again.
The LED goes out.

Calling up settings

Comfort function

1. Open the driver's door.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Briefly press the desired button 1 or 2.

The corresponding seat position is performed automatically.

The procedure stops when a reel for adjusting the seat or one of the buttons is pressed.

Safety mode

1. Close the driver's door or reel on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the desired button 1 or 2 until the adjustment procedure is completed.

Calling up of a seat position deactivated

After a brief period, calling up stored seat positions is deactivated to save battery power.

To reactivate calling up of a seat position:

- Open or close the door or tailgate.
- Press a button on the remote control.
- Press the Start/Stop button.

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

General information

The mirror on the passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the mirror setting is stored for the profile currently in use. When the vehicle is unlocked via the re-

mote control, the position is automatically retrieved if this function is active.

Note



Estimating distances correctly

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to the traffic behind you based on what you see in the mirror, as this will increase your risk of an accident. ◀

At a glance



- 1 Adjusting 59
- 2 Left/right, Automatic Curb Monitor
- 3 Fold in and out 60

Selecting a mirror



To change over to the other mirror:
Slide the switch.

Adjusting electrically



The setting corresponds to the direction in which the button is pressed.

Saving positions

Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory, refer to page 58.

Adjusting manually

In case of electrical malfunction press edges of mirror.

Automatic Curb Monitor

The concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, e.g.

Activating

1.  Slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating

Slide the switch to the passenger side mirror position.

Fold in and out



Press button.

Possible at speeds up to approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

E. g. this is advantageous

- ▷ In car washes.
- ▷ In narrow streets.
- ▷ For folding mirrors back out that were folded away manually.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.



Fold in the mirror in a car wash

Before washing the car in an automatic car wash, fold in the exterior mirrors by hand or with the button; otherwise, the mirrors could be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle. ◀

Automatic heating

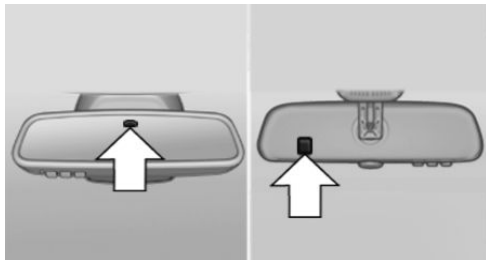
Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated whenever the engine is running.

Automatic dimming feature

Both exterior mirrors are automatically dimmed. Photocells are used to control the Interior rearview mirror, refer to page 60.

Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature

The concept



Photocells are used for control:

- ▷ In the mirror glass.
- ▷ On the back of the mirror.

Functional requirement

For proper operation:

- ▷ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▷ Do not cover the area between the inside rearview mirror and the windshield.

Steering wheel

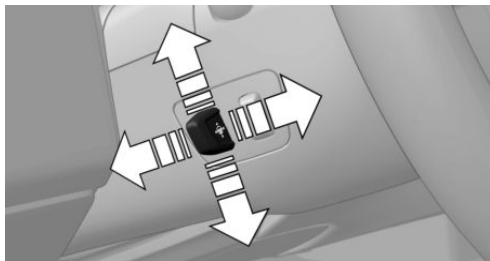
Note



Do not adjust while driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving; otherwise, an unexpected movement could result in an accident. ◀

Power steering wheel adjustment



The steering wheel can be adjusted in four directions.

Storing the position

Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory, refer to page 58.

Steering wheel heating



Press button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

M Drive

The concept

Individual settings can be carried out in two preassigned configurations for the vehicle.

When the engine is started, an efficient driving state is active by default. M Drive is deactivated.

At a glance

Configurations

The configurations are preassigned as follows:

- ▷ "M Drive 1": relaxed, comfortable driving.
- ▷ "M Drive 2": sporty, dynamic driving.

Setting options

Symbol	Meaning
	Dynamic Stability Control DSC, refer to page 130, and M Dynamic Mode MDM.
	Programs of M Engine Dynamics Control, refer to page 82.
	Programs of Vertical Dynamic Control, refer to page 133.
	Programs of Servotronic, refer to page 134.
	Drivelogic, refer to page 80: shift modes and Drivelogic driving programs.
	Views of the Head-up Display, refer to page 99.

Configuring M Drive

The preassigned configurations can be individually adjusted.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "M Drive 1" or "M Drive 2"
3. Select the desired setting option.
4. Select the desired channel.

Individual settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

If M Drive is activated, a change in the setting on the Control Display is immediately adopted.

Activating/deactivating M Drive

Activating

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

- ▷  Activate M Drive 1.
- ▷  Activate M Drive 2.

If DSC OFF or MDM is set in M Drive, a message appears in the instrument cluster. This message is confirmed by pressing the button again.

Deactivating

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.

Indicator lights

-  ▷ Indicator lamp comes on: corresponding M Drive is activated.
-  ▷ Indicator lamp flashes: M Drive could not be activated. Antilock braking system ABS or Dynamic Stability Control DSC directly regulate the driving stability.
Reactivate M Drive if indicator lamp is no longer flashing.

Hints

If M Drive is activated, individual settings can also be modified outside of M Drive, e. g. using the buttons in the center console. This deactivates M Drive.

To reactivate all settings made for M Drive on the Control Display, briefly press one of the following buttons:

- ▷ 
- ▷ 

To adopt the changed settings in M Drive, press and hold the corresponding button.

Resetting M Drive

Individual settings can be reset to default values.

1. "Settings"
2. "M Drive 1" or "M Drive 2"
3. "Reset M Drive 1" or "Reset M Drive 2"
4. "Yes"

To cancel resetting: "No"

Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

The right place for children

Note



Children in the vehicle

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle; otherwise, they could endanger themselves and other persons, e.g., by opening the doors. ◀

Children should always be in the rear

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the back seat.



Transporting children in the rear

Only transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm in the rear in child restraint systems provided in accordance with the age, weight and size of the child; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight and size. ◀

Children on the front passenger seat

Should it ever be necessary to use a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. Automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page [108](#).

Note



Deactivating the front-seat passenger airbags

If a child restraint system is used in the front passenger seat, deactivate the front-seat passenger airbags; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury to the child when the airbags are activated, even with a child restraint system. ◀

Installing child restraint systems

Hints



Manufacturer's information for child restraint systems

To select, mount and use child restraint systems, observe the information provided by the system manufacturer; otherwise, the protective effect can be lost. ◀



Ensuring the stability of the child seat

When installing child restraint systems, make sure that the child seat is securely fastened to the backrest of the seat. Angle and headrest of the backrest might need to be adjusted or possibly be removed. Make sure that all backrests are securely locked. Otherwise the stability of the child seat can be affected, and there is an increased risk of injury because

of unexpected movement of the rear seat backrest. ◀

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags



Deactivating the front-seat passenger airbags

If a child restraint system is used in the front passenger seat, deactivate the front-seat passenger airbags; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury to the child when the airbags are activated, even with a child restraint system. ◀

After installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Deactivate the front-seat passenger airbags automatically, refer to page 108.

Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust its height to the highest and thus best possible position for the belt and to offer optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchorage of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width



Backrest width for the child seat

Before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, the backrest width must be opened completely. Do not change

the adjustment after this; otherwise, the stability of the child seat will be reduced. ◀

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security



The rear safety belts and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.
3. Allow the strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint system

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Note



Follow manufacturer's information for LATCH child restraint systems

To mount and use the LATCH child restraint systems, observe the operating and safety information from the system manufacturer; otherwise, the level of protection may be reduced. ◀

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lb/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.



Properly engage the lower LATCH anchors

Make sure that the lower LATCH anchors have properly engaged and that the child restraint system is resting snugly against the backrest; otherwise, the degree of protection may be reduced. ◀

Before mounting the LATCH child restraint system, pull the belt away from the child restraint system.

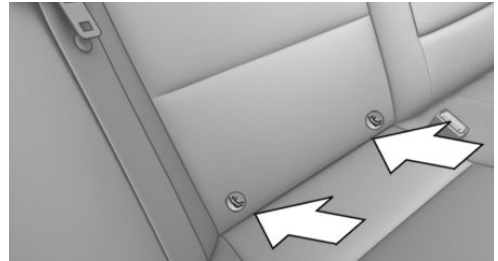


The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors.



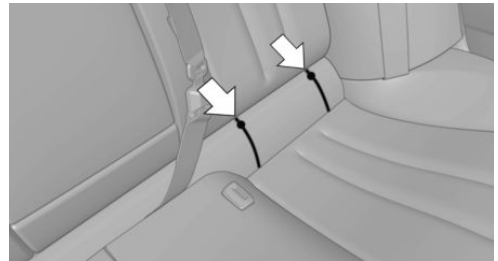
Position

BMW X5 M:



Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors are located in the gap between the seat and backrest.

BMW X6 M:



Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors are located behind the seat cover between the backrest and the seat cushion.

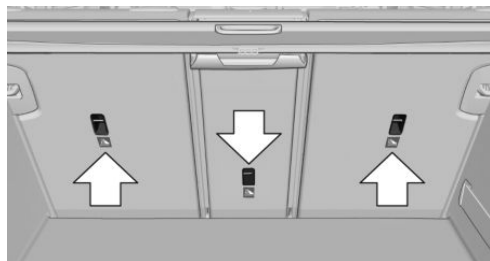
Open the zipper to access the anchors.

Assembly of LATCH child restraint systems

1. Mount the child restraint system; refer to the user's manual of the system.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

Child restraint fixing system with a tether strap

Mounting points



There are three mounting points on the rear seat backrest for child restraint systems with upper retaining strap.



The mounting point for the upper retaining strap is marked with a Top Tether symbol.

Note



Mounting eyelets

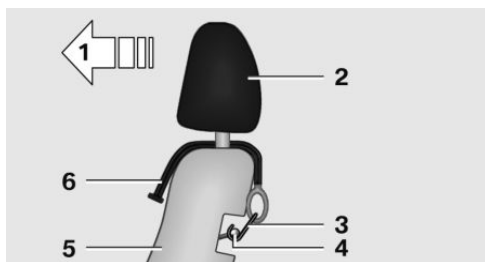
Use the mounting eyes only for the upper retaining strap to secure child restraint systems; otherwise, the mounting eyes could be damaged. ◀

BMW X5 M: retaining strap guide



Retaining strap

Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not passed over the head restraints or sharp edges and is not twisted up to the upper mounting points; otherwise, the belt cannot properly secure the child restraint system in an accident. ◀



- 1 Direction of travel
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook for upper retaining strap
- 4 Mounting point/eye
- 5 Seat backrest
- 6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

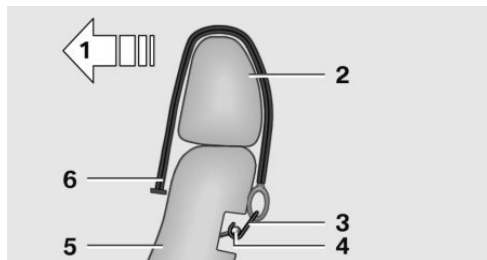
1. Raise the head restraint if needed.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports of the head restraint.
3. If there is a retaining strap, run it between the backrest and the cargo cover.
4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the mounting eye.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
6. Lower and lock head restraints as needed.

BMW X6 M: retaining strap guide



Retaining strap

Make sure the upper retaining strap does not run over sharp edges and is not twisted as it passes to the top anchor. Otherwise, the strap will not properly secure the child restraint system in the event of an accident. ◀



- 1 Direction of travel
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook for upper retaining strap
- 4 Mounting point/eye
- 5 Seat backrest
- 6 Upper retaining strap

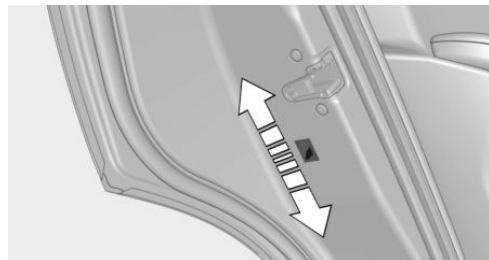
Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

Not for Australia:

1. Middle seat: raise the head restraint if needed.
2. Outer seats: guide the upper retaining strap over the head restraint.
Middle seat: guide the upper retaining strap between the supports of the head restraint.
3. If there is a retaining strap, run it between the backrest and the cargo cover.
4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the mounting eye.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
6. Middle seat: lower and lock head restraints as needed.

Locking the doors and windows

Rear doors



Push the locking lever on the rear doors up.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety reel for the rear



Press button on the driver's door if children are being transported in the rear.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear: safety reel, refer to page 49.

Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Start/Stop button

The concept



Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the ignition on or off and starts the engine.

The engine starts with the brake pedal pressed when you press the Start/Stop button.

Ignition on

Press the Start/Stop button, and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

All vehicle systems are ready for operation.

Most of the indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

To save battery power when the engine is off, reel off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

Note

If the engine is switched off and the ignition is switched on, the system automatically switches to the radio-ready state if the lights are turned off or, if correspondingly equipped, the daytime running lights are activated.

Ignition off

Press the Start/Stop button again, and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

All indicator lights in the instrument cluster go out.

To save battery power when the engine is off, reel off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.



P when the ignition is switched off

P is engaged automatically when the ignition is switched off. When in an automatic car wash, e.g., ensure that the ignition is not switched off accidentally. ◀

The ignition automatically cuts off while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is stopped:

- ▷ When locking the vehicle, and when the low beams are activated.
- ▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started. This function is only available when the low beams are turned off.
- ▷ When opening or closing the driver door, if the driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the low beams are turned off.
- ▷ While the driver's safety belt is unbuckled with driver's door open and low beams off.

The low beams reel to parking lights after approx. 15 minutes of no use.

Radio ready state

Activate radio-ready state:

- ▷ When the engine is running: press the Start/Stop button.

Some electronic systems/power consumers remain ready for operation.

The radio-ready state switches off automatically:

- ▷ After approx. 8 minutes.

- When the vehicle is locked using the central locking system.
- Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.

The radio-ready state remains active if, e.g., the ignition is automatically switched off for the following reasons:

- Opening or closing the driver's door.
- Unfastening of the driver's safety belt.
- When automatically switching from low beams to parking lights.

Starting the engine

Hints



Enclosed areas

Do not let the engine run in enclosed areas, since breathing in exhaust fumes may lead to loss of consciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas. ◀



Unattended vehicle

Do not leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running; doing so poses a risk of danger.

Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, set the parking brake and engage transmission position P; otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move. ◀



Repeated starting in quick succession

Avoid trying to start the vehicle repeatedly and in quick succession. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned, posing a risk of overheating and damage to the catalytic converter. ◀

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving at moderate engine speeds.

Steptronic Sport transmission

Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a certain time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Engine stop

Hints



Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, e.g., cannot start the engine. ◀



Apply parking brake and further secure the vehicle if needed.

Set the parking brake firmly when parking; otherwise, the vehicle could roll. On steep upward and downward inclines, further secure the vehicle, e.g., by turning the steering wheel in the direction of the curb. ◀

Before driving into a car wash

So that the vehicle can roll into a car wash observe instructions for going into an automatic car wash, refer to page 225.

Steptronic Sport transmission

Switching off the engine

1. Apply the brakes until the vehicle comes to a stop.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.
The engine is switched off.
The radio-ready state is switched on.
3. Set the parking brake.

Auto Start/Stop function

The concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, e.g., in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. The ignition remains switched on. The engine starts again automatically for driving off.

Semi-automatic mode

After every start of the engine using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is in the last selected state, refer to page 71.

When the Auto Start Stop function is active, it is available when the vehicle is traveling faster than about 3 mph, approx. 5 km/h.

Engine stop

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

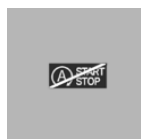
- ▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▷ The brake pedal remains pressed while the vehicle is stationary or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- ▷ The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster



The display indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an Automatic engine start.



The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

Note

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ External temperature too low.
- ▷ The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- ▷ The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- ▷ The engine is not yet at operating temperature.
- ▷ The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- ▷ After driving in reverse.
- ▷ Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- ▷ Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- ▷ At higher elevations.
- ▷ The engine compartment lid is unlocked.
- ▷ HDC Hill Descent Control is activated.
- ▷ The parking assistant is activated.
- ▷ Stop-and-go traffic.
- ▷ Use of fuel with high ethanol content.

Starting the engine

The engine starts automatically under the following conditions:

- ▷ By releasing the brake pedal.

When Automatic Hold is activated: press the accelerator pedal.

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met.

- ▷ The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- ▷ The hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

Note

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Excessive warming of the car's interior when the cooling function is switched on.
- The steering wheel is turned.
- Change from selector lever position D to N, R or D/S.
- The accelerator and the brake are pressed at the same time.
- Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.

Preventing automatic engine stop

The concept

To make it possible to drive off very quickly, such as at an intersection, the automatic engine stop can be actively prevented.

Preventing an engine stop using the brake pedal

The engine stop can be actively prevented within one second after the vehicle comes to a standstill.

- Immediately after the vehicle comes to a standstill, briefly press the brake pedal forcefully.
- Then press the brake pedal with normal braking force.

Activating/deactivating the system manually

Using the button



Press button.

- LED comes on: Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.
The engine can only be stopped or started via the Start/Stop button.
- LED goes out: Auto Start/Stop function is activated.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, e.g., when leaving it.

1. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
P is engaged automatically.
 2. Set the parking brake.
- Engine start as usual via Start/Stop button.

Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons as if the driver were absent.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked.

Parking brake

The concept

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

At a glance



Setting



Apply parking brake and further secure the vehicle if needed.

Set the parking brake firmly when parking; otherwise, the vehicle could roll. On steep upward and downward inclines, further secure the vehicle, e.g., by turning the steering wheel in the direction of the curb. ◀



Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, e.g., cannot release the parking brake. ◀



Pull the reel.

The LED lights up.



The indicator lamp lights up red. The parking brake is set.

While driving

Use as emergency brake while driving:

Pull the reel and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the reel is being pulled.



The indicator lamp lights up red, a signal sounds and the brake lights light up.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the vehicle is slowed down down to a speed of approx. 2 mph/3 km/h the parking brake is set.

Releasing

With the ignition switched on:



Press the reel while pressing on the brake pedal.

The LED and indicator lamp go out.

The parking brake is released.

Automatic release



Inadvertent operation of the accelerator pedal

Make sure that the accelerator pedal is not operated unintentionally; otherwise, the vehicle is set in motion and there is a risk of an accident. ◀

For automatic release, step on the accelerator pedal.

The LED and indicator lamp go out.

The parking brake is automatically released when you step on the accelerator:

- ▷ Engine on.
- ▷ Drive mode engaged.
- ▷ Driver buckled in and doors closed.

Automatic Hold

The concept

This system assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On inclines, the system prevents the vehicle from rolling backward when driving off.



Safety information



Secure the vehicle against rolling

Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, ensure that the parking brake is set. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move. ◀

Under the following conditions, Automatic Hold is automatically deactivated and the parking brake is set:

- The engine is switched off.
- A door is opened and driver's safety belt is unbuckled while the vehicle is stationary.
- The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.



The indicator lamp switches from green to red and the letters AUTO H go out.

Activating

This function can be activated when the driver's door is closed, the safety belt is fastened and the engine is running.



Press button.

up.



The indicator lamp lights up. Automatic Hold is activated.

Deactivating



Press button again.

The LED and the letters AUTO H go out.

Automatic Hold is deactivated.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, press on the brake pedal to deactivate it.

When the parking brake is set manually, Automatic Hold is deactivated automatically.

sDriving

Automatic Hold is activated: the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling after braking to a standstill.



The indicator lamp lights up green.

Step on the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically.

The indicator lamp goes out.



Before driving into a car wash

Before driving into the car wash, deactivate Automatic Hold; otherwise, the parking brake will be set when the vehicle is stationary and the vehicle will no longer be able to roll. ◀

Parking

The parking brake is automatically set if the engine is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold.



The indicator lamp changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set if the engine is switched off while the vehicle is coasting to a halt. Automatic Hold is deactivated.

Automatic Hold remains activated during the engine stop brought about by the Auto Start/Stop function.



Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, e.g., cannot release the parking brake. ◀

Malfuction

In the event of a failure or malfunction of the parking brake, secure the vehicle against rolling using a wheel chock, e.g., when leaving it.

Manual release



Before releasing, secure the vehicle against rolling

Before releasing the parking brake manually, and whenever you park the vehicle with the parking brake released, ensure that position P of the Steptronic transmission is set.

Secure the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the inclination of the road, e.g., with a wheel chock; otherwise, there is a danger of an accident and injuries if the vehicle rolls unintentionally. ◀

The parking brake can be released manually in the event of a power failure or electrical fault.

Unlocking

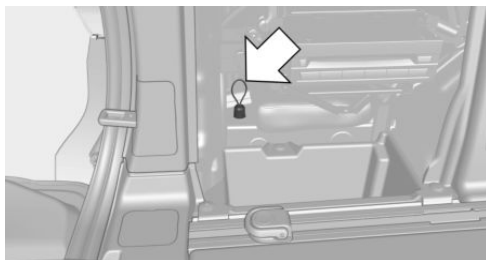


Have the malfunction corrected
If the parking brake has been released manually in response to a malfunction, only technicians can return it to operation.

Have the malfunction corrected by your service center. ◀

1. Open the left side trim in the cargo area.
2. Remove the first aid kit and warning triangle.

3. Insert the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit under the cargo floor panel into the strap of the release point, see arrow.
4. Forcefully pull the screwdriver up against the mechanical resistance until you notice a marked increase in the resistance and the parking brake releases audibly.



5. Stow the screwdriver, warning triangle and first aid kit, and close the left side trim in the cargo area.

After a power failure



Only put the parking brake into operation after a power failure

The parking brake should only be put into operation again if it was manually released due to an interruption in the supply of electrical power. Otherwise, it cannot be ensured that the parking brake will function properly. ◀

Putting the parking brake into operation

1. Switch on the ignition.
2.  Press the reel while stepping on the brake pedal or transmission position P is set.

It may take several seconds for the brake to be put into operation. Any sounds associated with this are normal.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation.

Turn signal, high beams, headlight flasher

Turn signal

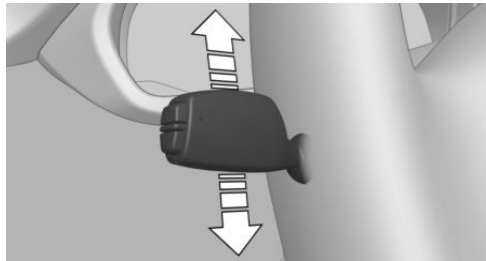
Hints



Do not adjust the exterior mirrors

Do not adjust the exterior mirror while driving and when blinker/hazards are on, or else the additional blinker lights in the exterior mirror are out of position and can't be seen. ◀

Using turn signals



Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To reel off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever to the resistance point.

The turn signal flashes three times.

The function can be activated or deactivated.

On the Control Display:

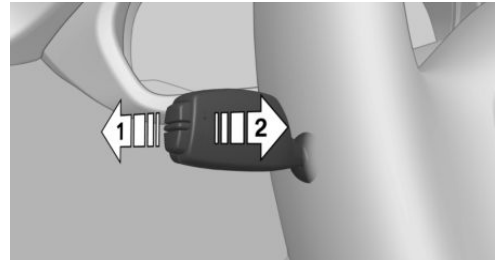
1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Triple turn signal"

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlight flasher



- ▷ High beams, arrow 1.
- ▷ Headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Washer/wiper system

Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe

Hints



Do not activate wipers if frozen to windshield

Do not reel on the wipers if they are frozen to the windshield; otherwise, the wiper blades and the wiper motor may be damaged. ◀



Do not activate wipers on dry windshield

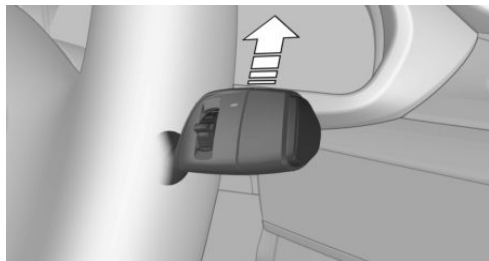
Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly. ◀



Do not activate wipers with wipers folded away

Do not reel on the wipers if they are folded away, otherwise the hood or the wipers may be damaged. ◀

Switching on

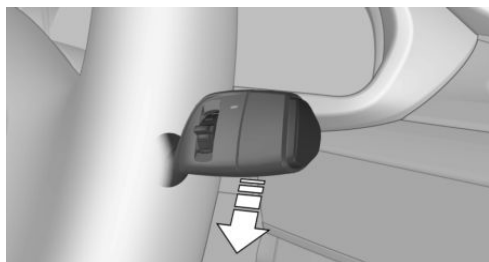


Push wiper lever up.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

- ▶ Normal wiper speed: push up once.
The wipers reel to intermittent operation when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▶ Fast wiper speed: press up twice or press once beyond the resistance point.
Wipers change to normal speed when vehicle comes to standstill.

Switch off and brief wipe



Push wiper lever down.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

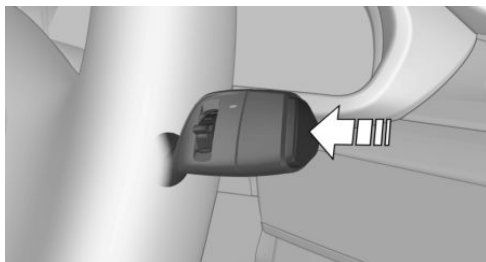
- ▶ Single wipe: press down once.
- ▶ To reel off normal wipe: press down once.
- ▶ To reel off fast wipe: press down twice.

Rain sensor

The concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall. The sensor is located on the windshield, directly behind the interior rearview mirror.

Activating/deactivating



Press button on the wiper lever.

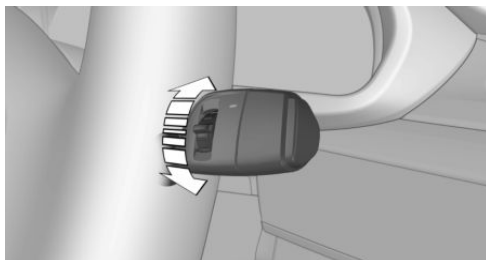
Wiping is started. If the vehicle is equipped with a rain sensor: LED in wiper lever lights up. When wipers are frozen to windshield, wiper operation is deactivated.



Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes

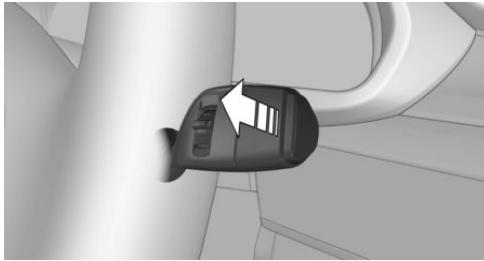
Deactivate the rain sensor when passing through an automatic car wash; otherwise, unintentional wiping can cause damages. ◀

Rain sensor, sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel.

Clean the windshield, headlights



Pull the wiper lever towards you.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

In addition, the headlights are cleaned at regular intervals when the vehicle's lights are activated.

 Do not use the washer system at freezing temperatures

Do not use the washers if fluid could freeze onto the windshield which might impede your viewing field. Therefore use antifreeze fluid.

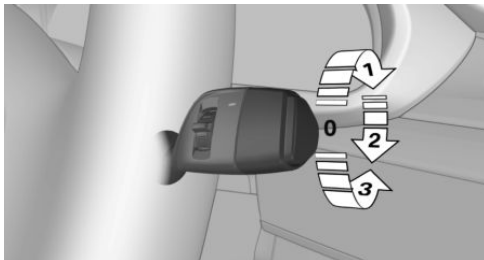
Avoid using the washer when the reservoir is empty; operation might damage pump. ◀

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while the ignition is switched on.

BMW X5 M: rear window wiper

Switching on the rear window wiper



Turn the switch from idle position 0 upward, arrow 1: interval mode. When reverse gear is

engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Cleaning rear window

In interval mode: turn the reel further, arrow 2. The reel automatically returns to its interval position when released.

In idle position: turn reel downward, arrow 3. The reel automatically returns to its idle position when released.

Fold-out position of the wipers

Fold wipers back when you want to change the blades or with pending low temperatures.

1. Switch the ignition on and off again.
2. With icy conditions make sure that blades are not frozen to the windshield.
3. Press the wiper lever up beyond the point of resistance and hold it for approx. 3 seconds, until the wiper remains in a nearly vertical position.

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

 Folding wipers back down
Before switching the ignition on, fold the wipers back down to the windshield; otherwise, the wipers may become damaged when they are activated. ◀

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Push wiper lever down. Wipers move to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

Washer fluid

General information

 Antifreeze for washer fluid
Antifreeze is flammable and can cause injury if it is used incorrectly.

Therefore, keep it away from possible sources of ignition.

Only keep it in the closed original container and inaccessible to children.

Follow the notes and instructions on the container.

United States: The washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratios limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container. Use BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent. ◀

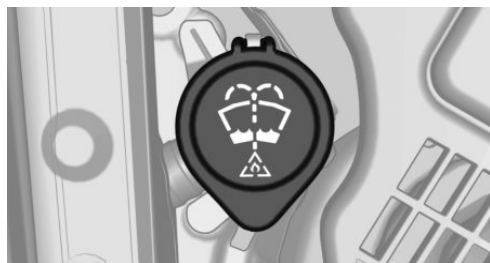
Washer fluid reservoir



Adding washer fluid

Only add washer fluid when the engine is cool, and then close the cover completely to avoid contact between the washer fluid and hot engine parts.

Otherwise, there is a danger of fire and a risk to personal safety if the fluid is spilled. ◀



All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Fill with a mixture of windshield washer concentrate and tap water and – if required – with a washer antifreeze, according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Mix the washer fluid before adding to find the right mixture.

Do not add windshield washer concentrate and antifreeze undiluted and do not fill with pure water; this could damage the wiper system.

Do not mix window washer concentrates of different manufacturers because they can clog the windshield washer nozzles.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

Steptronic Sport transmission

General information

The Steptronic Sport transmission is operated via the selector lever or two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

Functions

- ▷ Drive mode or Sequential mode.
- ▷ Various drive programs, Drivelogic.
- ▷ Upshifting display, Shift Lights, refer to page 100.
- ▷ Automatic downshifting and protection from misshifting even in sequential mode.
- ▷ Launch Control.
- ▷ Low Speed Assistant.

Selector lever, selector lever positions

At a glance



- ▷ R: reverse gear.
- ▷ N: neutral.
- ▷ ◈ Center position, forward position.
- ▷ +: manual upshifting.
- ▷ -: manual downshifting.

- ▷ D/S: reel between drive mode and sequential mode.

Engaging a selector lever position

Press on the brake pedal and pull or push the selector lever in the corresponding direction.

As soon as the selector lever is released, it reverts to the center position. In position R, the selector lever locks.

The engaged selector lever position is displayed in the instrument cluster and on the selector lever.

If a selector lever position is engaged, the vehicle may start rolling, after the brake is released, e.g. on downhill slopes. Thus, drive off immediately after releasing the brake.

Use the Slow Speed Assistant for maneuvering and during stop-and-go traffic.

Low Speed Assistant

The Low Speed Assistant gives assistance at very low speeds. The vehicle moves at walking speed.

This can also be used for rocking the vehicle in the snow. To do this, reel between reverse gear and forward gear without stepping on the brakes in the process.

Activating

1. Engage a driving position.
2. Briefly tap the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle rolls at minimum speed.

This is possible in 1st and 2nd gear and in reverse gear.

Deactivating

Apply the brakes until the vehicle comes to a stop.

Flashing display on the selector lever

The actually engaged transmission position can deviate from the selector lever position in

some situations. The display in the selector lever flashes.

Observe the display in the instrument cluster, refer to page 80, in these cases.

D Drive mode

In Drive mode, all forward gears are automatically changed.

Kickdown: for maximum acceleration, e. g. when passing. To do this, depress the accelerator pedal past the resistance point.

Switch to Sequential mode: shift using the shift paddles or the selector lever, or push the selector lever in the D/S direction.

S Sequential mode

Use the shift paddles or the selector lever to upshift or downshift without letting off the gas.

- ▷ Maximum speed: once maximum engine speed is attained, upshifting is not automatically performed in sequential mode. In addition, the kickdown is deactivated.
- ▷ Shortly before falling below a gear-dependent minimum speed, the transmission is automatically downshifted.
- ▷ Upshifting or downshifting is done only if the rpm and vehicle speed are appropriate. For example, there is no downshifting if the engine speed is too high.
- ▷ Kickdown: the lowest possible gear is selected by simultaneously operating the kickdown and the left shift paddle or selector lever.
- ▷ It is also possible to start out in 2nd gear, e. g. on icy roads.

Switch to Drive mode: push selector lever in D/S direction.

R is Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

It is also possible to rock the vehicle up to 6 mph/10 km/h. To do this, reel between for-

ward gear and reverse gear without stepping on the brakes in the process.

N is Neutral

Use in automatic car washes, e.g. The vehicle can then roll, refer to page 225.

P Park

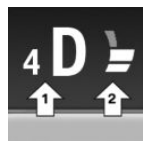
The drive wheels are blocked.

P is engaged automatically:

- After the engine is switched off when the vehicle is in radio-ready state, refer to page 68, or when the ignition is switched off, refer to page 68, and when position R or D is set.
- With the ignition is off, if position N is set.
- If the safety belt is unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and the brake is released while the vehicle is stationary and position D or R is set.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Drive mode



- Engaged gear together with a D, arrow 1.
- Selected driving program, Drivelogic, refer to page 80, arrow 2.

Sequential mode



- Engaged gear, arrow 1.
- Selected driving program, Drivelogic, refer to page 80, arrow 2.
- Gear shift indicator, refer to page 93

Note

When the external temperature is very low, the display may not work. Current driving direction

is recognizable at the engaged selector lever position.

Gear change

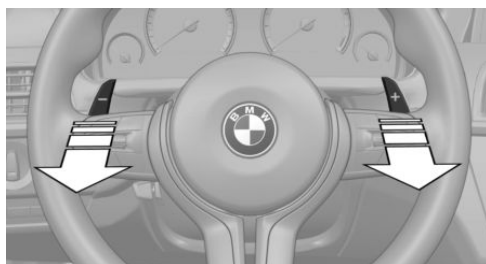
Shifting in Sequential mode possible.

A shift in Drive mode causes a reel to Sequential mode.

Using the selector lever

- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.
- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.

Using the shift paddles on the steering wheel



- Shift up: pull right shift paddle.
- Shift down: pull left shift paddle.

Drivelogic

Various driving programs are available.

After each reel between Sequential mode and Drive mode, the last program selected is an active.

Exception: after each engine start, driving program 1 is active in Drive mode.

In Drive mode

Choice of three driving programs:

- 1: efficient driving.
- 2: relaxed driving.
- 3: sporty driving.

In Sequential mode

Choice of three driving programs:

- ▷ 1: comfortable shifting operations.
- ▷ 2: sporty, fast shifting operations.
- ▷ 3: maximum shifting speed, Launch Control, refer to page 82.

Selecting driving program using button in center console



Press button repeatedly until the desired driving program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Selecting driving program using M Drive

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "M Drive 1" or "M Drive 2"
3.  Select the symbol.
4. "Mode"
5. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.
 - ▷ "D": drive mode
 - ▷ "S": sequential mode.
6. "Shift position"
7. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.
8. Selecting another driving program.
When M Drive is active, setting is immediately applied.

To activate M Drive with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:



Risk of an accident

Use the settings for DSC in M Drive; otherwise, driving stability may be impaired, and there is risk of an accident. ◀

Display in the instrument cluster



Selected driving program corresponds to the number of illuminated fields.

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

General information

Electronically unlock the transmission lock to maneuver vehicle from the danger area.

Unlocking is possible, if the started can spin the engine.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The starter must audibly start.
3. Press and hold the selector lever into position N.

A corresponding Check Control message is displayed.

4. Press the selector lever again into position N within approx. 6 seconds.

Position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

5. Release brake, as soon as the starter stops.
6. Maneuver the vehicle from the danger area and secure it against moving on its own.

Launch Control

The concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction.

Hints



Component wear

Do not use Launch Control too often; otherwise, this may result in premature wear of components due to the high stress placed on the vehicle. ◀

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in, refer to page 177, period.

Requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is warmed up, that is, after uninterrupted driving of at least 6 miles/10 km.

To start with Launch Control do not steer the steering wheel.

Activate Launch Control

1. Deactivate Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 131, or activate M Dynamic mode, refer to page 130.
2. Select Sequential mode with gear 1 and driving program 3.
3. With the engine running, firmly apply the brake with the left foot.
4. Depress the accelerator pedal far enough that a flag symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster.
Keep accelerator pedal in this position.
The starting engine speed adjusts.
5. Within 3 seconds, release the brake. The vehicle accelerates.

Upshifting occurs automatically as long as the flag symbol is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Launch Control is available again only after the transmission is cooled down to a certain degree.

M Driving Dynamics Control

The concept

The M Driving Dynamics Control affects the response of the vehicle to accelerator pedal movements.

Programs

Response behavior options:

- ▷ "Efficient": efficient, comfortable. Minimal fuel consumption.
Ideal e. g. in city traffic or on snow.
- ▷ "Sport": sporty, dynamic.
- ▷ "Sport Plus": spontaneous, direct. Maximum dynamics.

Selecting a channel

Via M Drive

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "M Drive 1" or "M Drive 2"
3. Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired channel.

When M Drive is active, setting is immediately applied.

To activate M Drive with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷



▷



Using the button



Press button repeatedly until the desired program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Display in the instrument cluster



Engine Dynamics Control with selected program with activated Display of the system states of the driving dynamics, refer to page [92](#).

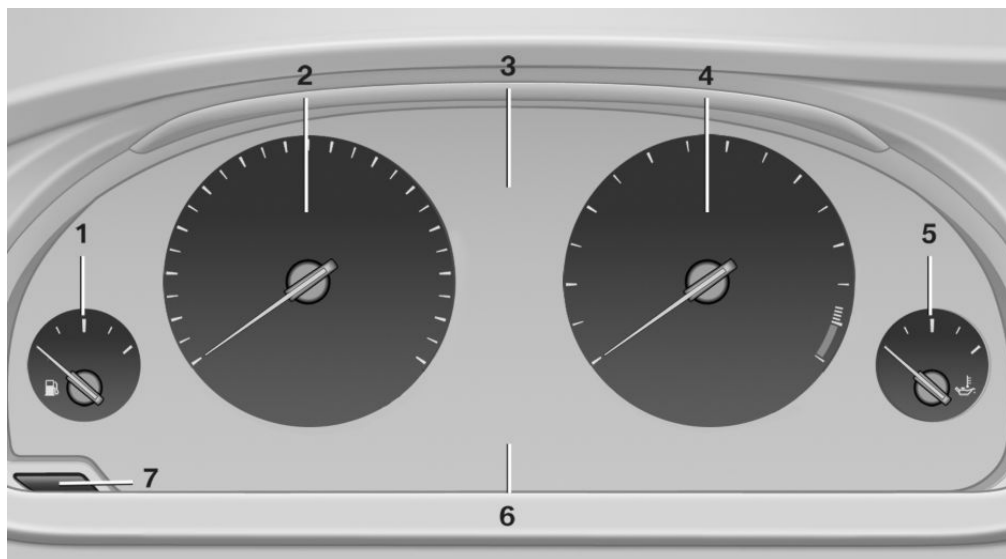
Displays

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Overview, instrument cluster



- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1 Fuel gauge 89 | 5 Engine oil temperature 89 |
| 2 Speedometer | 6 Electronic displays 84 |
| 3 Messages, e.g. Check Control | 7 Reset miles 89 |
| 4 Tachometer 89 | |

Electronic displays

- ▷ Selection lists, refer to page [94](#).
- ▷ External temperature, refer to page [89](#).
- ▷ Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page [70](#).
- ▷ Onboard computer, refer to page [95](#).
- ▷ Date, refer to page [90](#).
- ▷ Digital tachometer, refer to page [90](#).
- ▷ Energy recovery, refer to page [91](#).
- ▷ Gear display with Drivelogic, refer to page [90](#).

- Miles/trip miles, refer to page [89](#).
- Messages, e.g. Check Control, refer to page [85](#).
- Current fuel consumption, refer to page [91](#).
- Navigation display, see User's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication.
- Range, refer to page [90](#).
- Service requirements, refer to page [92](#).
- Speed limit detection, refer to page [93](#).
- System states of driving dynamics, refer to page [92](#).
- Time, refer to page [89](#).

Check Control

The concept

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

Indicator/warning lights

General information

The indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

Red lights

Safety belt reminder



Flashing or illuminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

Airbag system



Airbag system and belt tensioner are defective.

Have the vehicle checked by the service center immediately.

Parking brake



The parking brake is set.

For additional information, refer to Release parking brake, refer to page [72](#).

Brake system



Continue to drive moderately.

Have the vehicle checked by the service center immediately.



Front-end collision warning



Illuminated: advance warning is issued, e.g., when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

Increase distance.

Flashing: acute warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another vehicle at a relatively high differential speed.

Intervention by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Pedestrian warning



Symbol in the instrument cluster.

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, the symbol lights up and a signal sounds.

Yellow lights

Antilock Brake System ABS



It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during emergency stops.



Illuminated: avoid abrupt braking if possible. Braking force boost in some cases defective. Stop carefully. Take into account longer brake travel. Have this checked by the service center immediately.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control



Flashing: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and adapt driving profile to the driving circumstances.

Illuminated: DSC failed. Have the system checked by the service center.

For additional information, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC, refer to page 130.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control deactivated



DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched off.

For additional information, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC, refer to page 130.

M Dynamic Mode MDM



M Dynamic Mode MDM is switched on.



For more information, see M Dynamic Mode, refer to page 130.



Additional flashing: MDM controls the drive and brake forces. The vehicle is stabilized.



Illuminated: MDM failed. Have the system checked by the service center.



For more information, see M Dynamic Mode, refer to page 130.

FTM Flat Tire Monitor



The Flat Tire Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

For more information, see Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 112.

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM



Illuminated: the Tire Pressure Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Flashing and then continuously illuminated: no flat tire or loss of tire inflation pressure can be detected.

- ▶ Interference through systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▶ RDC could not conclude the reset: perform the reset of the system again.
- ▶ A wheel without TPM electronics is fitted: have the service center check it if needed.

- **Malfunction:** have the system checked by your service center.

For more information, see Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page [109](#).

Steering system



Steering system in some cases defective.

Have the steering system checked by the service center.

Engine functions



Have the vehicle checked by the service center.

For additional information, refer to On-board Diagnostics socket, refer to page [211](#).

Lane departure warning



System is switched on and under certain circumstances warns if a detected lane is left without flashing beforehand.

For additional information, refer to Lane departure warning, refer to page [123](#).

Green lights

Turn signal



Turn signal on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

For additional information, refer to Turn signal, refer to page [75](#).

Parking lights, headlight control



Parking lights or headlights are activated.

For additional information, refer to Parking lights/low beams, headlight control, refer to page [101](#).

Front fog lights



Front fog lights are activated.

For additional information, refer to Front fog lights, refer to page [104](#).

High-beam Assistant



High-beam Assistant is switched on.

High beams are activated and off automatically as a function of the traffic situation.

For additional information, refer to High-beam Assistant, refer to page [103](#).

Cruise control



The system is switched on. It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.

Automatic Hold



The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On inclines, the system prevents the vehicle from rolling backward when driving off.

For more information, see Automatic Hold, refer to page [73](#).

Blue lights

High beams



High beams are activated.

For additional information, refer to High beams, refer to page [75](#).

General lamps

Check Control



At least one Check Control message is displayed or is stored (symbol in display).

M Drive



M Drive 1 is activated.



M Drive 2 is activated.

Text messages

Text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator and warning lights.

Supplementary text messages

Additional information, such as on the cause of an error or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

Symbols

Depending on the Check Control message, the following functions can be selected.

- ▷  "Owner's Manual"

Display additional information about the Check Control message in the Integrated Owner's Manual.

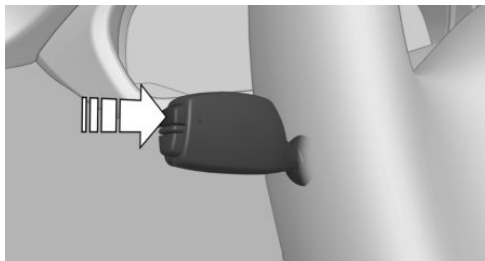
- ▷  "Service request"

Contact your service center.

- ▷  "Roadside Assistance"

Contact Roadside Assistance.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the onboard computer button on the turn signal lever.

- ▷ Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

These messages can be faded for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

- ▷ Other Check Control messages are faded automatically after approx. 20 seconds. They are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Check Control"
4. Select the text message.

Messages after trip completion

Special messages displayed while driving are displayed again after the ignition is switched off.

Fuel gauge



Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

Depending on the equipment version, the arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

Hints on refueling, refer to page [190](#).

Tachometer



Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Engine oil temperature



▶ Cold engine: the pointer is at the low temperature end. Drive at moderate engine and vehicle speeds.

▶ Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle or in the left half of the temperature display.

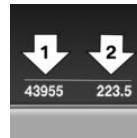
▶ Hot engine: the pointer is at the high end of the temperature range. A Check Control message is also displayed.

Coolant temperature

If the coolant along with the engine becomes too hot, a Check Control message is displayed.

Odometer and trip odometer

Display



- ▶ Odometer, arrow 1.
- ▶ Trip odometer, arrow 2.

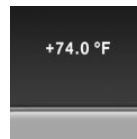
Show/reset kilometers



Press the knob.

- ▶ When the ignition is switched off, the time, the external temperature and the odometer are displayed.
- ▶ When the ignition is switched on, the trip odometer is reset.

External temperature



If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

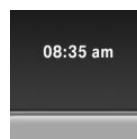


Ice on roads

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C, roads might be icy.

Therefore, drive carefully on bridges and shaded roads, e.g., to avoid the increased risk of an accident. ◀

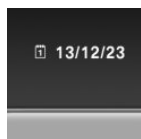
Time



The time is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Setting the time and time format, refer to page [97](#).

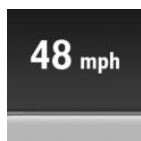
Date



The date is displayed in the computer.
Setting the date and date format, refer to page 98.

Digital tachometer

Display



The current speed is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activate display

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "Digital speedometer"

Adjusting the unit

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Dig. speedo:"
4. Select the desired unit.

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

Gear display with Drivelogic

Sequential mode



- ▷ Engaged gear, arrow 1.
- ▷ Selected driving program, Drivelogic, refer to page 80, arrow 2.

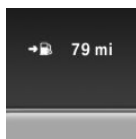
Drive mode



- ▷ Engaged gear together with a D, arrow 1.
- ▷ Selected driving program, Drivelogic, refer to page 80, arrow 2.

Range

Display



With a low remaining range:

- ▷ A Check Control message is displayed briefly.
- ▷ The remaining range is shown on the computer.
- ▷ With a dynamic driving style - e.g., taking curves aggressively - engine operation might vary.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.



Refuel promptly

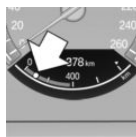
Refuel no later than at a range of 30 miles/50 km or engine operation might fail and damage might occur. ◀

Displaying the cruising range

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the range can also be displayed as bar in the instrument cluster.

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "Range"

Range when destination guidance is activated in the navigation system



With the appropriate equipment, when destination guidance is activated in the navigation sys-

tem, the range up to the destination is displayed.

Current fuel consumption

Display



Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the current fuel consumption can be displayed in the instrument cluster. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Displaying the current fuel consumption

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. If necessary, "M dynamic driving syst."
 - ☐ The display for the current fuel consumption is active.
 - ☒ Display of the dynamic driving systems, refer to page 92.

The bar display for the current fuel consumption is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Energy recovery

Display



The kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted to electrical energy while coasting. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be reduced.

Displaying energy recovery

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. If necessary, "M dynamic driving syst."

☐ The display for the energy recovery is active.

☒ Display of the dynamic driving systems, refer to page 92.

EfficientDynamics display

Displaying Efficient Dynamics

Information on fuel consumption and technology can be displayed while driving.

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "EfficientDynamics"

Displaying fuel consumption history

The average fuel consumption can be displayed within an adjustable time frame.

 "Consumption history"

Adjusting fuel consumption history time frame

 Select the symbol.

Resetting fuel consumption history

1. Open "Options".
2. "Reset consumption history"

Displaying EfficientDynamics info

The current efficiency can be displayed.

 "EfficientDynamics info"

The following systems are displayed:

- ▷ Automatic engine Start/Stop function.
- ▷ Energy recovery.
- ▷ Climate control output.

Dynamic driving systems

Display



The dynamic driving system states are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Symbols	Description
	M Engine Dynamics Control, refer to page 82.
	Vertical Dynamic Control, refer to page 133
	Servotronic, refer to page 134.



M Engine Dynamics Control, refer to page 82.



Vertical Dynamic Control, refer to page 133



Servotronic, refer to page 134.

Activate display

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. If necessary, "M dynamic driving syst."
 -  The display for the dynamic driving systems is active.
 -  Display for current consumption, refer to page 91, and energy recovery, refer to page 91.

Service requirements

The concept

After the ignition is turned on the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

Your service specialist can read the current service requirements from your remote control.

Display

Data regarding the service status or legally mandated vehicle inspections are automatically transmitted to your service center before a service due date.

Detailed information on service requirements

More information on the scope of service required can be displayed on the Control Display.

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Service required"

Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
	No service is currently required.
	The deadline for scheduled maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
	The service deadline has already passed.

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the required inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"

3.  "Service required"
 4. "§ Vehicle inspection"
 5. "Date:"
 6. Adjust the settings.
 7. Confirm.
- The entered date is stored.

Automatic Service Request

Data regarding the service status or legally mandated vehicle inspections are automatically transmitted to your service center before a service due date.

You can check when your service center was notified.

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"

Gear shift indicator

The concept

The system recommends the most fuel efficient gear for the current driving situation.

The gear shift indicator is active in the sequential mode of the Steptronic Sport transmission.

Suggestions to shift gear up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

On vehicles without a gear shift indicator, the engaged gear is displayed.

Displays

Symbol Description



Shift up to fuel efficient gear.



Shift down to fuel efficient gear.

Speed limit detection

The concept

Speed limit detection

Speed limit detection uses a symbol in the shape of a traffic sign to display the currently detected speed limit. The camera in the area of the interior rearview mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead sign posts. Traffic signs with extra symbols for wet road conditions, etc. are also detected and compared with the vehicle's onboard data, such as for the rain sensor, and will be displayed depending on the situation. The system takes into account the information stored in the navigation system and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

Hints



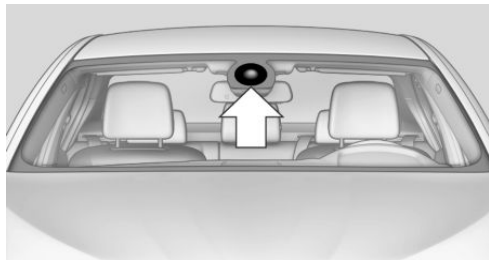
Personal judgment

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation.

The system assists the driver and does not replace the human eye. ◀

At a glance

Camera



The camera is found near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

On the Control Display:

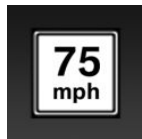
1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "Speed limit information"

If speed limit detection is switched on, it can be displayed on the info display in the instrument cluster via the computer.

Display

The following is displayed in the instrument cluster:

Speed limit detection



Current speed limit.



Speed limit detection is not available.

Speed limit detection can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- ▷ When signs are concealed by objects.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights.
- ▷ When the windshield behind the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
- ▷ In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
- ▷ If the speed limits stored in the navigation system are incorrect.
- ▷ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- ▷ When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.
- ▷ When passing buses or trucks with a speed sticker.
- ▷ If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.

Selection lists in the instrument cluster

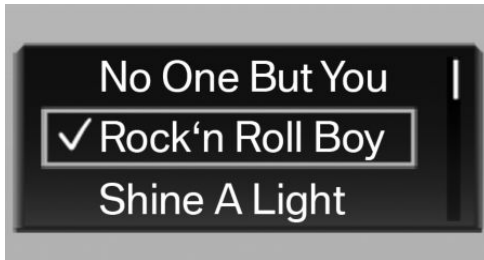
The concept

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the following can be displayed or operated using the buttons and the thumbwheel on the steering wheel as well as the displays in the instrument cluster and the Head-up Display:

- ▷ Current audio source.
- ▷ Redial phone feature.

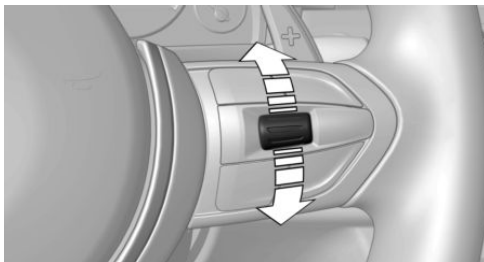
- ▷ Turn on voice activation system.

Display



Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the list in the instrument cluster can differ from the illustration shown.

Activating a list and adjusting the setting

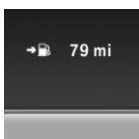


On the right side of the steering wheel, turn the thumbwheel to activate the corresponding list.

Using the thumbwheel, select the desired setting and confirm it by pushing the thumbwheel.

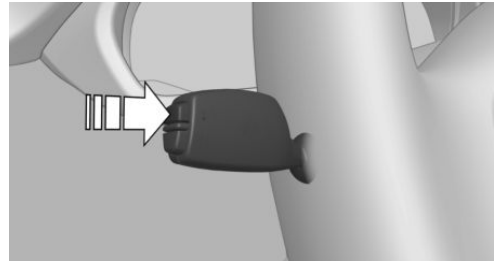
Computer

Indication in the info display



The information from the computer is shown in the info display in the instrument cluster.

Calling up information on the info display



Press the onboard computer button on the turn signal lever.

Information is displayed in the info display of the instrument cluster.

Information at a glance

Repeatedly pressing the button on the turn signal lever calls up the following information in the info display:

- ▷ Range.
- ▷ Average fuel consumption.
- ▷ Average speed.
- ▷ Date.
- ▷ Speed limit detection.

Not for a multi-functional instrument display.

- ▷ Time of arrival.

When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.

- ▷ Distance to destination.

When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.

- ▷ Compass display in the navigation system.

Adjusting the info display

Depending on the vehicle equipment version, you can select what information from the computer is to be displayed on the info display of the instrument cluster.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. Select the desired displays.

Information in detail

Range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel.

It is calculated based on your driving style over the last 20 miles/30 km.

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the period while the engine is running.

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the distance traveled since the last reset by the computer.

Average speed

Periods in which the vehicle is parked with the engine manually stopped are not included in the calculation of the average speed.

Resetting average values

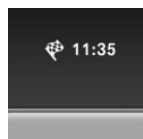
Press and hold the onboard computer button on the turn signal lever.

Distance to destination

The distance remaining to the destination is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The distance to the destination is adopted automatically.

Time of arrival



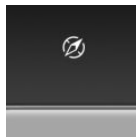
The estimated time of arrival is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The time must be correctly set.

Speed limit detection

Description of the speed limit detection, refer to page 93, function.

Compass



With navigation system Professional: compass display for the driving direction.

Trip computer

The vehicle features two types of board computers.

- ▷ "Onboard info": the values can be reset as often as necessary.
- ▷ "Trip computer": the values provide an overview of the current trip.

Resetting the trip computer

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Trip computer"
3. "Reset": all values are reset.
"Automatically reset": all values are reset approx. 4 hours after the vehicle came to a standstill.

Display on the Control Display

Display the computer or trip computer on the Control Display.

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

Resetting the fuel consumption or speed

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Onboard info"
3. "Consumpt." or "Speed"
4. "Yes"

Sport displays

The concept

On the Control Display, the current values for performance and torque can be displayed if the vehicle is appropriately equipped.

Displaying sport displays on the Control Display

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Sport displays"

Speed warning

The concept

Displays a speed, when reached, should cause a warning to be issued.

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed drops below the set speed once by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing the speed warning

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning at:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired speed is displayed.
5. Press the controller.

Speed warning is stored.

Activating/deactivating the speed warning

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning"
4. Press the controller.

Setting your current speed as the speed warning

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Select current speed"
4. Press the controller.

The current vehicle speed is stored as the speed warning.

Settings on the Control Display

Time

Setting the time zone

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time zone:"
4. Select the desired time zone.

The time zone is stored.

Setting the time

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed.
5. Press the controller.
6. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
7. Press the controller.

The time is stored.

Setting the time format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"

3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.

The time format is stored.

Automatic time setting

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the time, date and, if needed, the time zone are updated automatically.

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Auto time set"

Date

Setting the date

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired day is displayed.
5. Press the controller.
6. Make the necessary settings for the month and year.

The date is stored.

Setting the date format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.

The date format is stored.

Language

Setting the language

To set the language on the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Language:"
4. Select the desired language.

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

Setting the voice dialog

Voice dialog for the voice activation system, refer to page 27.

Units of measure

Setting the units of measure

To set the units for fuel consumption, route/ distance and temperature:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. Select the desired menu item.
4. Select the desired unit.

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

Brightness

Setting the brightness

To set the brightness of the Control Display:

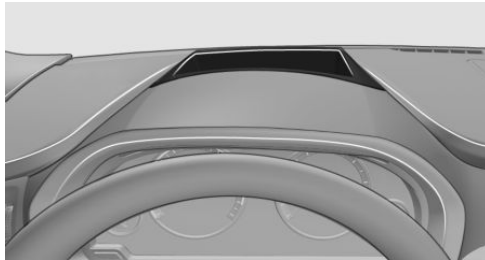
1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
5. Press the controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

Head-up Display

The concept



This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, e.g., the speed.

The driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

Display visibility

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- ▷ Certain sitting positions.
- ▷ Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- ▷ Wet roads.
- ▷ Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, check the basic settings.

Switching on/off

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Head-Up Display"

Display

Standard view

- ▷ Speed.
- ▷ Navigation system.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Selection list from the instrument cluster.

- ▷ Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

M view



- 1 Current engine speed, highlighted
- 2 Shift Lights
- 3 Pre-warning field, speed display
- 4 Red warning field, speed display
- 5 Speed
- 6 Gear display/warning messages

Activate M view:

Select displays in the Head-up Display.

Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. Select the desired displays in the Head-up Display.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"

3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the controller.

When the low beams are activated, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting.

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

Adjusting the height

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Height"
4. Turn the controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

Setting the rotation

Only set the rotation while the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is switched on.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Rotation"
4. Turn the controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape of the windshield makes it possible to display a precise image.

A film in the windshield prevents double images from being displayed.

Therefore, have the special windshield replaced by a service center only.

Shift Lights

General information

The display is in the Head-up Display.

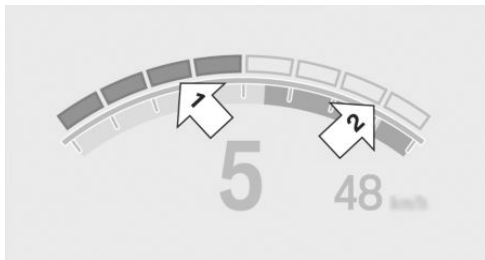
Shift Lights in the Head-up Display

Switching on

Shift lights are only shown in the Head-up Display in the M view, refer to page 99.

1. Switch on Head-up Display, refer to page 99.
2. "Settings"
3. "Head-Up Display"
4. "Displayed information"
5. "M View"

Display



- ▷ Current engine speed is displayed in the tachometer.
- ▷ Arrow 1: successive yellow illuminated fields indicate the upcoming upshift moment.
- ▷ Arrow 2: fields are illuminated in red. Do not wait any further to shift.

When the maximum possible speed is reached, the entire display flashes.

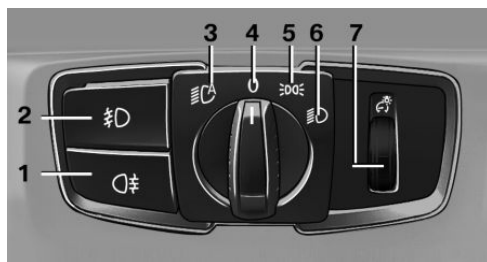
When the maximum speed is exceeded, the supply of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine. Speeds in this range must be avoided.

Lights

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

At a glance



- 1 Rear fog lights
- 2 Front fog lights
- 3 Depending on the equipment: automatic headlight control, Adaptive Light Control, High-beam Assistant, Welcome lights, Daytime running lights
- 4 Lights off, daytime running lights
- 5 Parking lights, daytime running lights
- 6 Depending on the equipment: low beams, welcome lights, High-beam Assistant
- 7 Instrument lighting

Parking lights/low beams, headlight control

General information

Position of switch: 0, ,

If the driver door is opened with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off at these reel settings.

Parking lights

Position of switch : the vehicle's lights light up on all sides, e.g., for parking.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the battery and it would then be impossible to start the engine.

When parking, it is preferable to reel on the one-sided roadside parking lights, refer to page 102.

Low beams

Position of switch with the ignition switched on: the low beams light up.

Welcome lights

When the vehicle is parked, leave the reel in position or : parking and interior lights come on briefly when the vehicle is unlocked depending on the ambient brightness.

Activating/deactivating

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Welcome lights"

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

Headlight courtesy delay feature

The low beams stay lit for a short while if the headlight flasher is switched on after the radio-ready state is switched off.

Setting the duration

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway lighting"
4. Set length of time.

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

Automatic headlight control

Position of switch  : the low beams are activated and off automatically, e.g., in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation. The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

When emerging from a tunnel during the day, the low beams are not switched off immediately but instead only after approx. 2 minutes.

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

The low beams always stay on when the fog lights are activated.



Personal responsibility

The automatic headlight control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when to turn the lights on in response to ambient lighting conditions.

E. g. the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks under these conditions, you should always switch on the lights manually. ◀

Daytime running lights

With the ignition switched on, the daytime running lights light up in position 0,  or  . After the ignition is switched off, the parking lights light up in position  .

Activating/deactivating

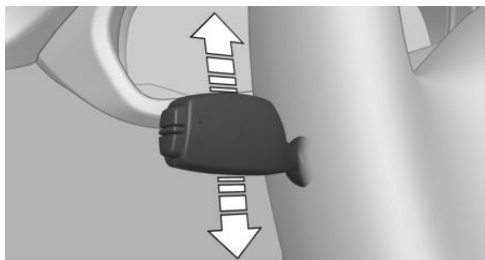
In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Daytime running lamps"

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

Roadside parking lights



The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

Switching on

With the ignition switched off, press the lever either up or down past the resistance point for approx. 2 seconds.

Switch off

Briefly press the lever to the resistance point in the opposite direction.

Adaptive Light Control

The concept

Adaptive Light Control is a variable headlight control system that enables dynamic illumination of the road surface.

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlight follows the course of the road.

In tight curves, e.g., on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional, corner-illuminating lamp is switched on that lights up the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

Activating

Position of switch  with the ignition switched on.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control does not swivel to the driver's side when the vehicle is at a standstill.

The turning lights are automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the turning lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering angle.

Self-leveling headlights

The self-leveling headlights compensate for acceleration and braking operations in order not to blind the oncoming traffic and to achieve optimum illumination of the roadway.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

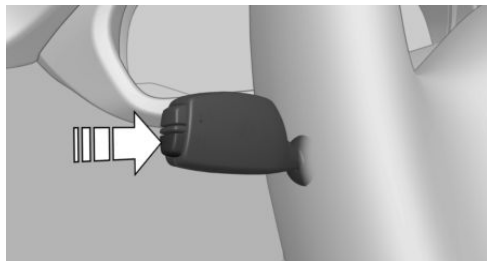
Adaptive Light Control is malfunctioning or has failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

High-beam Assistant

The concept

When the low beams are activated, this system automatically switches the high beams on and off or suppresses the light in the areas that blind oncoming traffic. The procedure is controlled by a camera on the front of the interior rearview mirror. The assistant ensures that the high beams are activated whenever the traffic situation allows. The driver can intervene at any time and reel the high beams on and off as usual.

Activating



1. Depending on the equipment, turn the light switch into position  or .
2. Press button on the turn signal lever, arrow.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

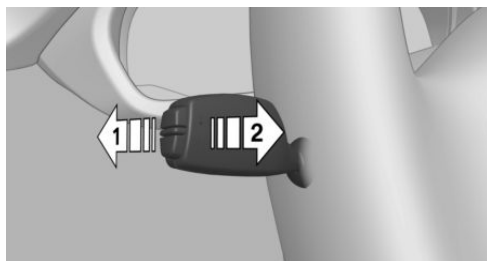
When the low beams are on, the lights are automatically brightened or dimmed.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, e.g., in towns and cities.



The blue indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams. Depending on the version of the system in the vehicle, the high beams may not reel off for oncoming vehicles, but may only be dimmed in the areas that blind oncoming traffic. In this case, the blue indicator light will stay on.

Switching the high beams on and off manually



- High beams on, arrow 1.

- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

The High-beam Assistant can be switched off when manually adjusting the light. To reactivate the High-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

System limits



Personal responsibility

The High-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. Therefore, manually reel off the high beams in situations where required to avoid a safety risk. ◀

The system is not fully functional in situations such as the following, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- ▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings.
- ▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-observed oncoming traffic on freeways.
- ▷ In poorly-lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- ▷ At low speeds.
- ▷ When the windshield behind the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Fog lights

Front fog lights

The low beams must be switched on.



Press button. The green indicator lamp lights up.

If the automatic headlight control, refer to page 102, is activated, the low beams will

come on automatically when you reel on the front fog lights.

When the high beams or headlight flasher are activated, the front fog lights are not switched on.

Instrument lighting

Adjusting



The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

Interior lights

General information

The interior lights, footwell lights, access lights and courtesy lights are controlled automatically.

Thumb wheel for the instrument lighting controls brightness of some of these features.



- 1 Interior lights
- 2 Reading lamp

Switching the interior lights on and off



Press button.

To reel off permanently: press the button for approx. 3 seconds.

Switch back on: press button.

Reading lights



Press button.

Reading lights are located at the front and rear next to the interior lights.

Ambient light

Depending on your optional features lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the interior.

Selecting color scheme

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Lighting design"
4. Select desired setting.

To deactivate the ambient light: "Off".

Setting the brightness

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Brightness:"
4. Adjust the brightness.

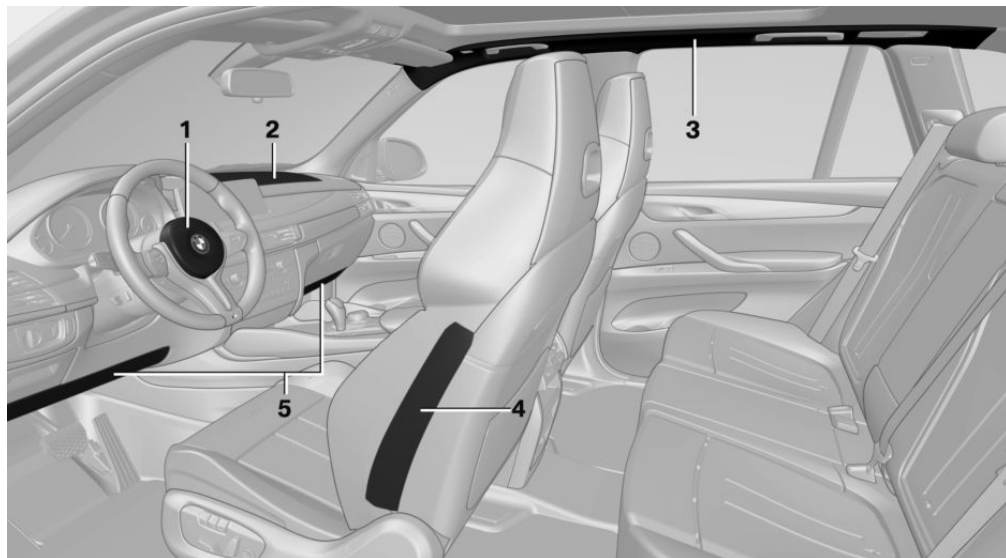
Safety

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver

2 Front airbag, front passenger

3 Head airbag

4 Side airbag

5 Knee airbags

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate restraint.

Side airbags

In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

Head airbags

In a lateral impact, the head airbag supports the head.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag supports the legs in a frontal impact.

Protective action

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.



Information on how to ensure the optimal protective effect of the airbags

- ▷ Keep at a distance from the airbags.
- ▷ Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim, holding your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- ▷ There should be no person, animals, or objects between an airbag and a person.
- ▷ Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- ▷ Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, e. g., for GPS devices or mobile phones.
- ▷ Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the footwell; otherwise, leg injuries might occur when front airbag is activated.
- ▷ Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not approved specifically for seats with integrated side airbags.
- ▷ Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- ▷ Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag and do not rest against the head airbag; otherwise, injuries might occur when airbag is activated.
- ▷ Do not remove the airbag system.
- ▷ Do not remove the steering wheel.
- ▷ Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.

- ▷ Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, the seats, the roof pillars and the sides of the roofliner. ◀

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive individuals.



Malfunction, deactivation and after deploying the airbags

Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered; otherwise, you may risk burns.

Only have the airbags checked, repaired or dismantled and the airbag generator scrapped by the service center or an authorized repair shop for handling explosives.

Non-professional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or unintentional activation of the airbag - both may lead to injury. ◀

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Functional readiness of the airbag system



When the ignition is reel on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioner.

Airbag system malfunctioning

- ▷ Warning lamp does not come on when the ignition is turned on.
- ▷ The warning lamp lights up continuously.



In case of a malfunction have airbag system checked immediately.

In case of a malfunction have airbag system checked immediately; otherwise, there is a risk that the system does not function as expected in case of a severe accident. ◀

Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee and side airbag on the front passenger's side are either activated or deactivated.



Leave feet in the footwell

Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the footwell; otherwise, proper functioning of the front passenger airbag might not be assured. ◀



Child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety notes and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children. ◀

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion

- ▷ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by your vehicle's manufacturer.
- ▷ Do not place any electronic devices on the passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- ▷ Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.
- ▷ No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags



The indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbags.

The lamp indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.



- ▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint fixing system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- ▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when, e.g., a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child seats

The system generally detects children seated in a child seat, particularly in child seats required by NHTSA when the vehicle was manu-

factured. After installing a child seat, make sure that the indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child seat has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

The explosive power that activates driver's/ front passenger's airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger's seat.

With a respective message appearing on Control Display calibrate the front seats to keep the accuracy of this function over the long-term.

Calibrating the front seats

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Press the reel and move the respective seat all the way forward.
2. Press the reel forward again. The seat still moves forward slightly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.



Unobstructed area of movement

Ensure that the area of movement of the seats is unobstructed to avoid personal injury or damage to objects. ◀

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM

The concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires. For this purpose, sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

Hints



Tire damage due to external factors

Sudden tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance. ◀

With use of the system observe further information found under Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 194.

Functional requirements

The system must have been reset with the correct tire inflation pressure; otherwise, reliable signaling of tire inflation pressure loss is not assured.

Reset the system after each adjustment of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics to ensure that the system will operate properly.

Status display

The current status of the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the TPM is active.

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM)"

The status is displayed.

Status control display

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a text message on the Control Display.

All wheels green

System is active and will issue a warning relative to the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One wheel is yellow

A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire.

All wheels are yellow

A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in several tires.

Wheels, gray

The system cannot detect a flat tire. Reasons for this may be:

- ▷ The system is being reset.
- ▷ Malfunction.

Status information

The status control display additionally shows the current tire inflation pressures and possibly tire temperatures. It shows the actual values read; they may vary depending on driving style or weather conditions.

Carry out reset

Reset the system after each adjustment of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

On the Control Display and on the vehicle:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Perform reset"
4. Start the engine - do not drive off.

5. Reset tire inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The tires are shown in gray and the status is displayed.

After driving faster than 19 mph/30 km/h for a short period, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as reference values. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After a successfully completed Reset, the wheels on the Control Display are shown in green and "Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM) active" is displayed.

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

Low tire pressure message



The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

- ▷ There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.
 - ▷ No reset was performed for the system. The system therefore issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures before the last reset.
1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
 2. Identify the damaged wheel. Do so by checking the tire inflation pressure using the Mobility System. To correct the tire inflation pressure
 3. Repair flat tire with the Mobility System or replace the damaged wheel.

A low tire inflation pressure might turn on DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

Required tire inflation pressure check message

A Check Control message is displayed in the following situations

- The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done.
- Inflation was not carried out according to specifications.
- The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last confirmation.

In this case:

- Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
- Carry out a reset of the system after a tire change.

System limits

The system does not function properly if a reset has not been carried out, e.g., a flat tire is reported though tire inflation pressures are correct.

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature. Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure. The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again. These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Malfunction



The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. No flat tire or loss of tire inflation pressure can be detected.

Display in the following situations:

- A wheel without TPM electronics, such as an emergency wheel, is mounted: have the service center check it if needed.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by your service center.
- TPM was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- Interference through systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leav-

ing the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.

Declaration according to NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction tell-tale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

FTM Flat Tire Monitor

The concept

The system detects tire inflation pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. This will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The system must have been initialized when the tire inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable flagging of a flat tire is not assured. Initialize the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the FTM is active.

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Flat Tire Monitor (FTM)"

The status is displayed.

Initialization

When initializing the once set inflation tire pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Perform reset"
4. Start the engine - do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

Indication of a flat tire



The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Identify the damaged wheel. Do so by checking the tire inflation pressure using the Mobility System. If the tire inflation pressure in all tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.
3. Repair flat tire with the Mobility System or replace the damaged wheel.

System limits



Sudden tire damage

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance. ◀

A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- ▶ When the system has not been initialized.
- ▶ When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- ▶ Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- ▶ When driving with snow chains.

Intelligent Safety

The concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance system. Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems that can help prevent a imminent collision.

- ▶ Front-end collision warning with City Braking function, refer to page 114.
- ▶ Pedestrian warning, refer to page 116.
- ▶ Lane departure warning, refer to page 123.
- ▶ Active Blind Spot Detection, refer to page 124.

Note



Personal responsibility

The system does not serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation.

Be aware of the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings at all times, otherwise accidents are still possible despite all warnings. ◀

At a glance

Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety button

Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.



Press button briefly:

- ▶ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
- ▶ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently in use.



Press button again:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.
- ▶ The LED lights up green.



Hold down button:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.

- ▷ The LED goes out.

Front-end collision warning with City Braking function

The concept

The system can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be prevented, the system will help reduce the collision speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and actuates brakes independently if needed.

The automatic braking intervention is done with limited force and duration.

A camera in the area of the rearview mirror controls the system.

The front-end collision warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally the collision warning is delayed avoiding false alarm.

Note



Personal responsibility

The system does not serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation.

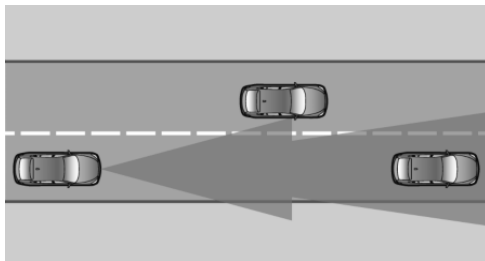
Be aware of the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings at all times, otherwise accidents are still possible despite all warnings. ◀

General information

The system warns at two levels of an imminent danger of collision at speeds from approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. Time of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Appropriate braking kicks in at speeds of up to 35 mph/60 km/h.

Detection range



It responds to objects if they are detected by the system.

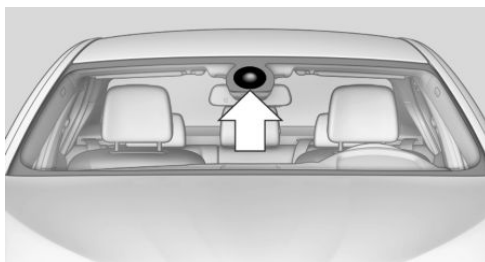
At a glance

Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety button

Camera



The camera is found near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving-off.

Switching on/off manually



Press button briefly:

- ▶ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
- ▶ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently in use.



Press button again:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.
- ▶ The LED lights up green.



Hold down button:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.
- ▶ The LED goes out.

Setting the warning time

The warning time can be set via iDrive.

1. "Settings"
2. "Frontal Coll. Warning"
3. Activate the desired time on the Control Display.

The selected time is stored for the profile currently in use.

Warning with braking function

Note



Adapting your speed and driving style

The warning does not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her driving speed and style to the traffic conditions. ◀

Display

If a collision with a recognized vehicle is imminent a warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

Symbol	Measure
	The vehicle lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	The vehicle flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. You are requested to intervene by braking or make an evasive maneuver.



The vehicle lights up red: prewarning.

Brake and increase distance.



The vehicle flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning.

You are requested to intervene by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Prewarning

This warning is issued, e.g., when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

The driver must intervene actively when there is a prewarning.

Acute warning with braking function

Warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a relatively high differential speed.

The driver must intervene actively when there is an acute warning. If necessary, the driver is assisted by a minor automatic braking intervention in a possible risk of collision.

Acute warnings can also be triggered without previous prewarning.

Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Premise for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with some braking intervention if there is risk of a collision. At low speeds vehicles may thus come to a complete stop.

The braking intervention is executed only if DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on and M Dynamic mode MDM is not activated.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.



Tow-starting and towing

For towing the vehicle turn, switch off the Intelligent Safety systems; otherwise malfunctions of the individual braking systems might lead to accidents. ◀

System limits



Be alert

Due to system limitations, warnings may not be issued at all, or may be issued late or improperly. Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀

Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

E. g. the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.

- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snow-fall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, e.g., DSC OFF.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera in the mirror is dirty or obscured.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop knob.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.
- ▷ If there is constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, e.g., from the sun low in the sky.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, the more warnings are displayed. However, there may also be an excess of false warnings.

Pedestrian warning

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the function warns of an imminent collision with pedestrians during daytime or nighttime.

The function is subdivided into the following systems:

- ▷ During daytime: Pedestrian warning with city braking function, refer to page 117
- ▷ At night: Night vision, refer to page 119

Pedestrian warning with city braking function

The concept

The system can help prevent accidents with pedestrians.

The system issues a warning in the city driving speed area if there is imminent danger of a collision with pedestrians and includes a braking function.

The camera in the area of the rearview mirror controls the system.

Note



Personal responsibility

The system does not serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation.

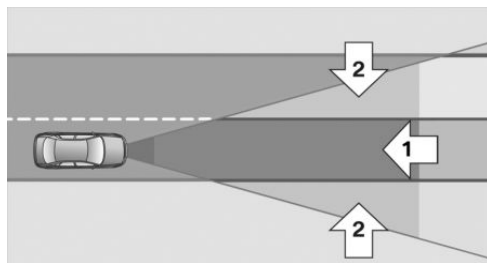
Be aware of the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings at all times, otherwise accidents are still possible despite all warnings. ◀

General information

In daylight the system warns of possible collisions with pedestrians at speeds from about 6 mph/10 km/h to about 35 mph/60 km/h shortly before a collision the system supports you with a braking intervention.

Under those circumstances it reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

Detection range



The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas.

- ▷ Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ Expanded area, arrow 2, to the right and left.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

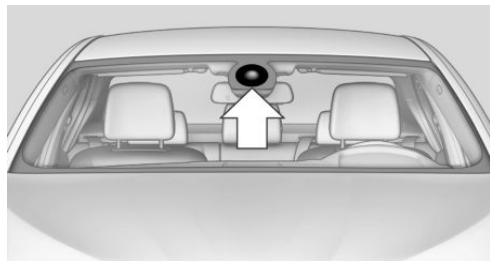
At a glance

Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety button

Camera



The camera is found near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving-off.

Switching on/off manually



Press button briefly:

- ▶ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.

- ▶ LED lights up orange or goes out respectively to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently in use.



Press button again:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.

- ▶ The LED lights up green.



Hold down button:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.

- ▶ The LED goes out.

Warning with braking function

Note



Adapting your speed and driving style

The warning does not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her driving speed and style to the traffic conditions. ◀

Display

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.



The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Premise for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with some braking intervention if there is risk of a collision. At low speeds vehicles may thus come to a complete stop.

The braking intervention is executed only if DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on and M Dynamic mode MDM is not activated.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.



Tow-starting and towing

For towing the vehicle turn, switch off the Intelligent Safety systems; otherwise malfunctions of the individual braking systems might lead to accidents. ◀

System limits



Be alert

Due to system limitations, warnings may be not issued at all, or may be issued late or improperly. Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀

Detection range

The detection potential of the camera is limited.

Thus a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

E. g. the following situations may not be detected:

- ▶ Partially covered pedestrians.
- ▶ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- ▶ Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- ▶ Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- ▶ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snow-fall.
- ▶ In tight curves.
- ▶ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, e.g. DSC OFF.
- ▶ If the camera viewing field or the front windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop knob.
- ▶ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.
- ▶ If there is constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, e.g., from the sun low in the sky.
- ▶ When it is dark outside.

Night Vision with Pedestrian and Animal Detection

The concept

Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection is a night vision system.

An infrared camera scans the area in front of the vehicle and issues a warning if it detects pedestrians and animals on the street. Warm objects that are similar in shape to human beings or animals are detected by the system. If necessary, the heat image can be displayed on the Control Display.

Heat image



The image shows the heat radiated by objects in the field of view of the camera.

Warm objects have a light appearance and cold objects, a dark appearance.

The ability to detect an object depends on the temperature difference between the object and the background and on the level of heat radiation emitted by the object. Objects that are similar in temperature to the environment or that radiate very little heat are difficult to detect.

For safety reasons, when driving at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h and in low ambient light, the image is only displayed when the low beams are activated.

A still image is displayed at regular intervals for a fraction of a second.

Pedestrian and animal detection



Object detection and warning only functions in darkness.

Warm objects that are similar in shape to human beings are detected by the system.

In addition, the system also detects animals above a certain minimum size, e.g., deer.

With heat image activated on the Control Display:

People detected by the system are displayed with a slight yellow hue.

Animals detected by the system are displayed in a darker yellow.

Under good ambient conditions, the object detection operates within the following distance ranges:

- ▷ Pedestrian detection: up to approx. 330 ft/100 m
- ▷ Detection of large animals: up to approx. 490 ft/150 m
- ▷ Detection of medium animals: up to approx. 230 ft/70 m

Environmental influences can limit the availability of object detection.

If the vehicle systems detect that the vehicle is located in a residential area, the animal detection is temporarily switched off.

Hints



Personal responsibility

Night Vision cannot replace the driver's personal judgment of the visibility conditions and the traffic situation. The view ahead and the actual visibility conditions must always be the basis on which the vehicle speed is adjusted; otherwise, there is a risk to road safety. ◀

At a glance

Buttons in the vehicle

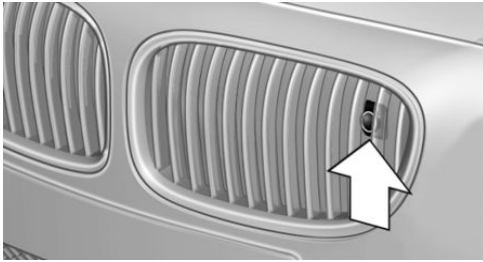


Intelligent Safety button



Switch on/reel off heat image

Camera



The camera is automatically heated when the external temperatures are low.

The camera is automatically cleaned together with the headlights.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

When it is dark outside, the system is automatically active after every driving-off.

Switching on/off manually



Press button briefly:

- ▶ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
- ▶ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently in use.



Press button again:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.
- ▶ The LED lights up green.



Hold down button:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.
- ▶ The LED goes out.

Switching on heat image additionally

The heat image from the Night Vision camera can also be displayed on the Control Display. This function has no effect on object detection.



Press button.

The image from the camera is displayed on the Control Display.

Adjustments via the iDrive

With heat image switched on:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select brightness or contrast.
 - ▶  Select the symbol.
 - ▶  Select the symbol.
3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached, and press the controller.

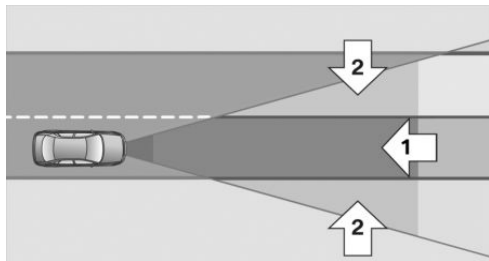
Display

Warning of people or animals in danger

If a collision with a person or an animal detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

Although both the shape and the heat radiation are analyzed, false warnings cannot be ruled out.

Warning area in front of the vehicle



The warning area for the pedestrian warning consists of two parts:

- ▷ Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ Expanded area, arrow 2, to the right and left.

With animal warnings, no distinction is made between the central or expanded area.

The entire area moves along with the vehicle in the direction of the steering angle and changes with the vehicle speed. As the vehicle speed increases, the area becomes longer and wider, e.g.

Prewarning



The yellow symbol is displayed when a person is detected in the central area, arrow 1, immediately in front of the vehicle.

The yellow symbol is displayed when a person in the extended area, arrow 2, is moving from the right or left towards the central area.

The displayed symbol can vary with the people detected.

Intervene actively by braking or make an evasive maneuver.



When animals are detected, an animal symbol is displayed. The symbol also shows the side of the road on which the animal was detected. Intervene actively by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Acute warning



The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

When animals are detected, a red animal symbol is displayed with the signal tone.



Red symbol in the instrument cluster.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Display in the Head-up Display



The warning is displayed simultaneously in the Head-up Display and on the instrument cluster. The displayed symbol can vary with the people detected.

When animals are detected, an animal symbol is displayed.

System limits

Basic limits

System operation is limited in situations such as the following:

- ▷ On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- ▷ When the camera is dirty or the protective glass is damaged.
- ▷ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- ▷ At very high external temperatures.

Limits of pedestrian and animal detection

In some situations, it may occur that pedestrians are detected as animals or animals as pedestrians.

Small animals are not detected by the object detection function, even if they are clearly visible in the image.

Limited detection:

- People or animals who are fully or partially covered, especially when their heads are covered.
- People who are not in an upright position, e.g., lying down.
- Cyclists on unconventional bicycles (e.g., recumbent bicycles).
- After physical damage to the system, e.g., after an accident.

No display on the rear screen

The image from Night Vision cannot be displayed on the rear screen.

Lane departure warning

The concept

Starting at a specific speed, this system alerts you when the vehicle on streets with lane markings is about to leave the lane. This speed, depending on the country version, is between 35 mph/55 km/h and 45 mph/70 km/h.

The steering wheel begins vibrating gently in the event of warnings. The time of the warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set before leaving the lane.

Hints



Personal responsibility

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the course of the road and the traffic situation.

In the event of a warning, do not jerk the steering wheel, as you may lose control of the vehicle. ◀

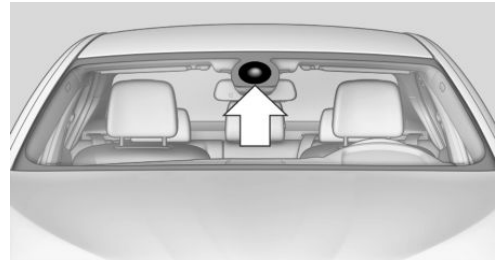
At a glance

Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety button

Camera



The camera is found near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The lane departure warning is automatically activated after departure, if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on/off manually



Press button briefly:

- The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off ac-

cording to their respective settings.

- ▶ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently in use.



Press button again:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.
- ▶ The LED lights up green.



Hold down button:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.
- ▶ The LED goes out.

Display in the instrument cluster



- ▶ Lines: system is activated.
- ▶ Arrows: at least one lane marking was detected and warnings can be issued.

Issued warning

If you leave the lane and if a lane marking has been detected, the steering wheel begins vibrating.

If the turn signal is set before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

End of warning

The warning ends:

- ▶ Automatically after approx. 3 seconds.
- ▶ When returning to your own lane.
- ▶ When braking hard.
- ▶ When using the turn signal.

System limits

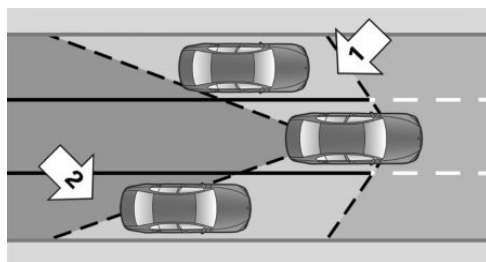
The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▶ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.

- ▶ In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- ▶ When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▶ In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- ▶ When the lane markings are covered by objects.
- ▶ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▶ When driving toward bright lights.
- ▶ When the windshield in front of the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.
- ▶ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.

Active Blind Spot Detection

The concept



Two radar sensors below the rear bumper monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle at speeds above approx. 30 mph/50 km/h.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in the blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind on the adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The lamp in the exterior mirror housing is dimmed.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above.

The lamp in the exterior mirror housing flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Hints



Personal responsibility

The system does not serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation.

Be aware of the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings at all times, otherwise accidents are still possible despite all warnings. ◀

At a glance

Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety button

Radar sensors

BMW X5 M:



BMW X6 M:



The radar sensors are located under the rear bumper.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The Active Blind Spot Detection is automatically activated after departure, if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on/off manually



Press button briefly:

- ▶ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.

- ▶ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently in use.



Press button again:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.
- ▶ The LED lights up green.

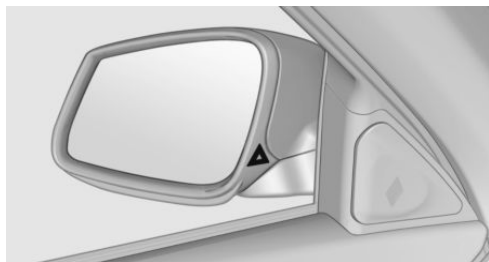


Hold down button:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.
- ▶ The LED goes out.

Display

Lamp in the exterior mirror housing



Information stage

The dimmed lamp in the exterior mirror housing indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

Warning

If the turn signal is set while a vehicle is in the critical zone, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the lamp in the exterior mirror housing flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the turn signal is switched off, or the other vehicle leaves the critical zone.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- ▷ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- ▷ If the bumper is dirty or iced up, or covered with stickers.

A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication

Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

- ▷ NBG009014A.

Compliance statement:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- ▷ This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- ▷ this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Brake force display

The concept

BMW X5 M:



- ▷ During normal brake application, the outer brake lights light up.
- ▷ During heavy brake application, the inner brake lights light up in addition.

BMW X6 M:



- ▷ During normal brake application, the bottom brake lights light up.
- ▷ During heavy brake application, the top brake lights light up in addition.

Active Protection

General information

The Active Protection safety package consists of systems that are independent of each other:

- ▷ Attentiveness assistant.
- ▷ PreCrash
- ▷ PostCrash

Attentiveness assistant

The concept

The system can detect increasing lack of alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous journeys, e.g., on highways. In this situation, it is recommended that the driver takes a break.

Note



Personal responsibility

The system cannot act as a substitute for the personal assessment of one's physical state and may not detect an increasing lack of alertness or fatigue or may not detect it correctly. Therefore, make sure that the driver is rested and alert; otherwise, risks may be de-

tected too late and an accident be caused as a result. ◀

Function

The system is activated each time the engine is started and cannot be switched off.

After travel has begun, the system is trained about the driver, so that increasing lack of alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes the following criteria into account:

- ▷ Personal driving style, e.g., steering behavior.
- ▷ Driving conditions, e.g., length of trip.

Starting at approximately 43 mph/70 km/h, the system is active and can display a recommendation to take a break.

Break recommendation

If the driver becomes increasingly less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

A recommendation to take a break is displayed only once during an uninterrupted trip.

After a break, another recommendation to take a break cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes.

System limits

The function may be limited in the following situations, for instance, and will either output an incorrect warning or no warning at all:

- ▷ When the clock is set incorrectly.
- ▷ When the vehicle speed is mainly below about 43 mph/70 km/h.
- ▷ With a sporty driving style, such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- ▷ In active driving situations, such as when changing lanes frequently.
- ▷ When the road surface is poor.
- ▷ In the event of strong side winds.

PreCrash

The concept

With this system critical driving situations that might result in an accident can be detected above a speed of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. In these situations, preventive measures are automatically taken to minimize the risk of an accident as much as possible.

Critical driving situations may include:

- ▷ Emergency stop.
- ▷ Severe understeering.
- ▷ Severe oversteering.

If the vehicle includes the front-end collision warning or front-end collision warning with braking feature, impending collisions with vehicles driving ahead or stopped in front of you can also be detected within the system's range.

Note



Personal responsibility

The system cannot possibly serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation. The system may not always detect critical situations reliably and in a timely manner. Adapt speed to traffic situation and drive alertly; otherwise, a risk to safety may result.◀

Function

After the safety belt is buckled, the front belts are automatically pretensioned once after the vehicle is driven is away.

In critical driving situations, the following individual functions become active as needed:

- ▷ The front belts are automatically pretensioned.
- ▷ Automatic closing of the windows.
- ▷ Automatic closing of the glass sunroof.

- ▷ For vehicles equipped with power backrest adjustment: automatic positioning of the backrest for the front passenger seat.

After a critical driving situation without an accident, the front belts are loosened again. All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the belt using the red button in the buckle. Fasten the belt before continuing on your trip.

PostCrash

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the car to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision and the consequences thereof.

Depressing the brake pedal can cause the vehicle to brake harder. This interrupts automatic braking. Destepping on the gas pedal also interrupts automatic braking.

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically. Secure the vehicle against rolling.

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Antilock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle contains its steering power even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the greatest possible braking force boost. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during emergency stop. This system utilizes all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

Drive-off assistant

This system supports driving off on inclines. The parking brake is not required.

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle load or when a trailer is used, the vehicle may roll back slightly.



Driving off without delay

After releasing the foot brake, start driving without delay, since the drive-off assistant will not hold the vehicle in place for more than approx. 2 seconds and the vehicle will begin to roll back. ◀

Dynamic Performance Control

The Dynamic Performance Control increases both the agility of the vehicle as well as the lane stability.

The system seamlessly handles the distribution of the drive torque between the two rear wheels.

Depending on the situation, the drive torque is shifted from the wheel on the inside of the curve to the wheel on the outside of the curve or vice-versa.

To increase the maneuverability, the rear wheel on the outside of the curve is accelerated when the driving style is correspondingly sporty.

The steering responds directly; simultaneously, the understeering tendency of the four-wheel drive is reduced.

With the oversteering tendency, the system exerts a stabilizing effect by accelerating the rear wheel on the inside of the curve.

The system noticeably improves the traction and simultaneously increases the driving safety, especially on road surfaces having fluctuating coefficients of friction.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The concept

DSC prevents traction loss in the power wheels when driving off and accelerating.

DSC also recognizes unstable vehicle conditions such as fishtailing or nose-diving. Within the physical limits DSC helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by applying brakes to the individual wheels.

Note



Adjust your driving style to the situation
An appropriate driving style is always the responsibility of the driver.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, not even with DSC.

Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin by driving in a risky manner. ◀



Do not deactivate DSC when driving with roof load

Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with roof load, e.g. roof-mounted luggage rack.

Otherwise, driving safety is not given in driving-critical situation due to the elevated center of gravity. ◀

At a glance

Button in the vehicle



DSC OFF button

Indicator/warning lights



The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has failed.

M Dynamic Mode MDM

M Dynamic Mode makes it possible to drive on a dry roadway with high longitudinal and transverse acceleration but with limited driving stability.

Only in the absolute limit area does the system intervene for stabilization by reducing the engine power and by braking interventions on the wheels. In this driving condition, additional steering corrections may be necessary.



Limited stabilizing interventions

When M Dynamic Mode is activated, stabilizing interventions are carried out only to a reduced extent. You must react yourself; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Activating MDM



Press button briefly.

The MDM and DSC OFF indicator lights on the instrument cluster light up.

Deactivating MDM



Press button.

The MDM and DSC OFF indicator lights go out.

Via M Drive

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "M Drive 1" or "M Drive 2"
3.  Select the symbol.
4. "MDM"

To open M Drive with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:



A message appears in the instrument cluster. This message is confirmed by pressing the button again.

Deactivating MDM

Press the appropriate button 1 or button 2 on the steering wheel again.

M Dynamic Mode and the settings selected under M Drive are deactivated.

Indicator/warning lights



Indicator lights light up:
M Dynamic Mode is activated.



DSC indicator lamp also flashes:
M Dynamic Mode controls the drive forces and brake forces.



Indicator lights light up:
M Dynamic Mode or DSC has failed.



Deactivating DSC: DSC OFF

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC



Press and hold this button but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up in the instrument cluster and displays DSC OFF.

The DSC system is switched off.

Activating DSC



Press button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

Via M Drive

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "M Drive 1" or "M Drive 2"
3.  Select the symbol.
4. "DSC OFF"

To open M Drive with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:



A message appears in the instrument cluster. This message is confirmed by pressing the button again.

Indicator/warning lights

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.



The indicator lamp lights up: DSC is deactivated.

xDrive

xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of your vehicle. Concerted action by the xDrive and DSC further optimize traction and driving dynamics. The xDrive all-wheel-drive system variably distributes the drive forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road surface.

Display on the Control Display

Displaying xDrive view

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "xDrive status"
3.  "xDrive view"

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ With a navigation system: compass display for the driving direction
- ▷ Pitch attitude with degree and percentage
- ▷ Transverse gradient with degree indication
- ▷ Graphic display for the steering

Displaying distribution of the drive torque

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "xDrive status"
3.  "Torque distribution"

HDC Hill Descent Control

The concept

HDC is a downhill driving assistant that automatically controls vehicle speed on steep downhill gradients. Without applying the brakes, the vehicle moves at slightly more than walking speed.

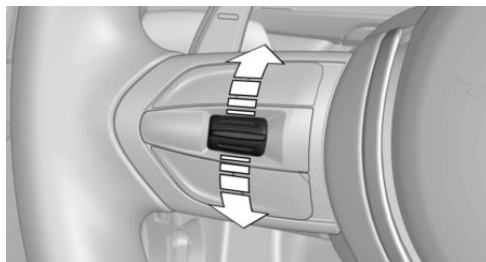
Hill Descent Control can be activated at speeds below approx. 22 mph/35 km/h. When driving downhill, the vehicle reduces its speed to approx. walking speed and then keeps its speed constant.

As long as there is active braking, the system is on standby. The system does not brake the vehicle during this time.

Only use HDC in low gears or in selector lever position D or R.

Increasing or decreasing vehicle speed

Specify desired speed in the range from approx. 4 mph/6 km/h to approx. 15 mph/25 km/h using the rocker reel of the cruise control on the steering wheel. Vehicle speed can be changed by lightly accelerating.



- ▷ Press the rocker reel up to the point of resistance: the speed increases gradually.
- ▷ Press up the rocker reel past the point of resistance: the speed increases while the rocker reel is pressed.
- ▷ Press the rocker reel down to the point of resistance: the speed decreases gradually.
- ▷ Press the rocker reel down past the point of resistance: when driving forward, the speed decreases to approx. 6 mph/10 km/h; when reversing, the speed decreases to approx. 4 mph/6 km/h.

Activating HDC



Press button; the LED above the button lights up.

Deactivating HDC



Press button again and the LED goes out. HDC is automatically deactivated above approx. 37 mph/60 km/h.

Display in the instrument cluster



The selected speed is displayed in the speedometer.

- ▷ Green: the system is actively braking the vehicle.
- ▷ Orange: the system is on standby.

Malfunction

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster. HDC is not available, e.g., due to elevated brake temperatures.

Vertical Dynamic Control

The concept

This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a dynamic driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces.

The system enhances driving dynamics and comfort fitting road surface and driving style.

Programs

Setting options for calibrating the shock absorbers:

- ▷ "Comfort": comfort-oriented.
- ▷ "Sport": balanced out.
- ▷ "Sport Plus": consistently sporty.

Selecting a channel

Via M Drive

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "M Drive 1" or "M Drive 2"
3.  Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired channel.

When M Drive is active, setting is immediately applied.

To activate M Drive with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷



▷



Using the button



Press button repeatedly until the desired program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Display in the instrument cluster



Vertical Dynamic Control with selected program with activated display of the system states of the driving dynamics, refer to page 92.



Using the button



Press button repeatedly until the desired program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Display in the instrument cluster



Servotronic with selected program with activated display of the System states of the driving dynamics, refer to page 92.

Servotronic

The concept

The Servotronic varies the steering force required to turn the wheels in accordance with the vehicle speed. At low speeds, the steering force is strongly supported, i. e. during steering, low force is required. As the speed increases, the assistance of the steering force is reduced.

Furthermore, the steering force adapts according to the driving program, so that a direct, sporty feel and/or comfortable steering is conveyed.

Programs

Steering force setting options:

- ▷ "Comfort": low.
- ▷ "Sport": medium.
- ▷ "Sport Plus": high.

Selecting a channel

Via M Drive

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "M Drive 1" or "M Drive 2"
3.  Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired channel.

When M Drive is active, setting is immediately applied.

To activate M Drive with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

Self-leveling suspension

The concept

The self-leveling suspension keeps the vehicle height and ground clearance constant. The height of the vehicle at the rear axle is maintained at a predefined level under all load conditions.

The system ensures consistent comfort by keeping spring travel constant in all driving situations.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed. The system is disrupted. Vehicle handling may be altered and driving comfort may be noticeably reduced. Visit your nearest service center.

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Cruise control

The concept

The system maintains a preset speed via the buttons on the steering wheel. The system brakes on downhill gradients if engine braking is insufficient.

General information

Depending on the driving settings, the features of the cruise control can change in certain areas.

Hints



Unfavorable conditions

Do not use the system if unfavorable conditions make it impossible to drive at a constant speed, e.g.:

- ▷ On winding roads.
- ▷ In heavy traffic.
- ▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow or rain, or on a loose road surface.

Otherwise, you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident. ◀

Controls

At a glance

Press button	Function
	Cruise control on/off, interrupt, refer to page 135
	Store/maintain speed, refer to page 136
	Resume speed, refer to page 136
	Rocker reel: Maintain, store, change speed, refer to page 136

Buttons are arranged according to vehicle's series, optional features and country specifications.

Switching on



Press button on the steering wheel.

The marking in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

The cruise control can be used.

Switch off



Deactivated or interrupted system

With deactivated or interrupted system use your brakes, steering and moves as usual to avoid the chance of an accident. ◀



Press button on the steering wheel.

- ▷ If active: press twice.
- ▷ If interrupted: press once.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting



When active, press the button.

The system is automatically interrupted if:

- ▷ The brakes are applied.
- ▷ Selector lever position D is disengaged.
- ▷ MDM is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- ▷ DSC is actively controlling stability.
- ▷ HDC is activated.

Maintaining, storing, and changing the speed

Hints



Adjusting the desired speed

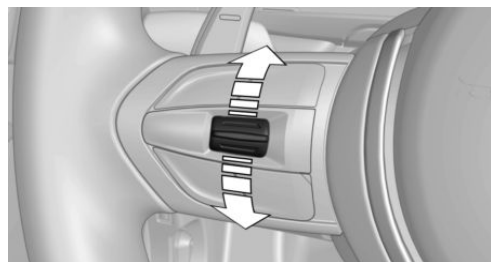
Modify desired speed to road conditions and be ready to brake at all times; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀

Maintaining/storing the speed



Press button.

Or:



Press the rocker reel while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

This is displayed, refer to page 136, in the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster.

When cruise control is maintained or stored, DSC Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on if needed.

Changing the speed

Press the rocker reel up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷ Each time the rocker reel is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the rocker reel is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.

- ▷ Pressing the rocker reel to the resistance point and holding it accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator pedal.

After the rocker reel is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the reel beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Resuming the desired speed



Press button.

The stored speed is reached and maintained.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Indicator lamp



Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the indicator lamp in the instru-

ment cluster indicates whether the system is switched on.

Desired speed



- ▶ The marking lights up green: the system is active.
- ▶ The marking lights up orange: the system has been interrupted.
- ▶ The marking does not light up: the system is switched off.

Brief status display



Selected desired speed.

If --- appears briefly on the display for Check Control messages, it is possible that the system requirements are currently not ready for operations.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

PDC Park Distance Control

The concept

PDC is a support when parking. When you slowly approach an object in the rear - or also in the front of the vehicle if the feature is available - then the object is reported through:

- ▶ Signal tones.
- ▶ Visual display.

General information

Ultrasound sensors in the bumpers measure the distances from objects.

The maneuvering range, depending on the obstacle and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning is first given:

- ▶ By the front sensors and the two rear corner sensors at approx. 24 in/60 cm.
- ▶ By the rear middle sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

To ensure full functionality:

- ▶ Do not cover sensors, e.g., with stickers, bicycle racks and the like.
- ▶ Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.
- ▶ When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.

Hints



Personal responsibility

Even an active system does not relieve the driver from personal responsibility while driving.

Technically the system has its limits, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations.

Monitor your driving, be on the alert, observe the vehicle surroundings and other traffic and react when needed - risk of accident. ◀



Avoid driving fast with PDC

Avoid approaching an object too fast.

Avoid driving off fast while PDC is not yet active.

For technical reasons, the system may otherwise be too late in issuing a warning. ◀

At a glance

With front PDC: button in vehicle



PDC Park Distance Control

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

PDC switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.
The rearview camera also switches on.
- ▷ If equipped with front PDC: when obstacles are detected behind or in front of the vehicle by PDC and the speed is slower than approx. 2 mph/3 km/h.

You may turn off automatic activation:

1. "Settings"
2. "Parking"
3. Select setting.
Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if needed.

With front PDC: switching on/off manually



Press button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed when the reverse gear is engaged by pressing the button.

Display

Signal tones

When approaching an object, an intermittent sound indicates the position of the object. E. g. if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 10 in/25 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

With front PDC: if objects are located both in front of and behind the vehicle, an alternating continuous signal is sounded.

The signal tone is switched off:

- ▷ When the vehicle moves away from an object by more than approx. 4 in/10 cm.

Volume

The volume of the PDC signal tone can be adjusted similar to the sound and volume settings of the radio.

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

Visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

A display appears as soon as Park Distance Control (PDC) is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in the colors green, yellow and red.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the reel can be made to PDC:

 "Rear view camera"

System limits

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:

- ▷ For small children and animals.
- ▷ For persons with certain clothing, e.g. coats.
- ▷ With external interference of the ultrasound, e.g. from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- ▷ Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- ▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ With moving objects.
- ▷ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- ▷ With objects with corners and sharp edges.
- ▷ With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- ▷ For objects with porous surfaces.

Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

False warnings

PDC may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- ▷ In heavy rain.
- ▷ When sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
- ▷ When sensors are covered in snow.
- ▷ On rough road surfaces.
- ▷ On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- ▷ In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, e.g., in underground garages.
- ▷ Through heavy pollution.
- ▷ Due to other ultrasound sources, e.g., sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The range of the sensors is shown as a shaded area on the Control Display.

PDC has failed. Have the system checked.

To ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.
- ▷ dimmedDo not put any stickers on sensors.
- ▷ When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.

Surround View

The concept

Surround View comprises various camera assistance systems that help the driver when parking, maneuvering, and at complex exits and intersections.

- ▷ Rearview camera, refer to page 140

- ▷ Top View, refer to page 142.
- ▷ Side View, refer to page 144.

Rearview camera

The concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

Hints



Check the traffic situation as well. Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects that are not depicted by the camera. ◀

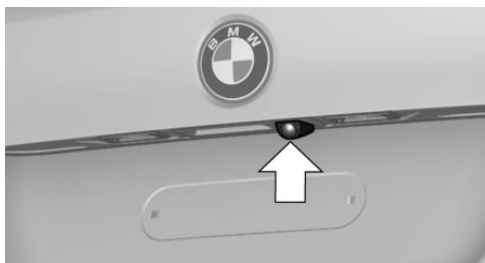
At a glance

Button in the vehicle



Rearview camera

Camera



The camera lens is located in the handle of the tailgate. The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the lens, refer to page 228.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

With the engine running, engage lever in position P R.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if needed.

Switching on/off manually



Press button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The PDC is shown on the Control Display.

The rearview camera image is displayed when the reverse gear is engaged by pressing the button.

Switching the view via iDrive

With PDC activated or Top View switched on:

⏏ "Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

Display on the Control Display

Functional requirement

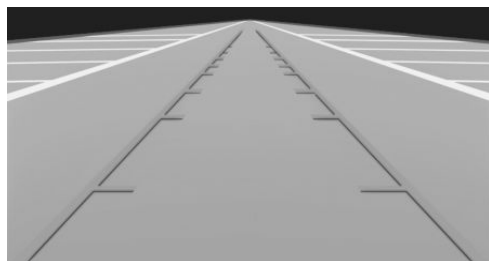
- ▶ The rearview camera is switched on.
- ▶ The tailgate is fully closed.

Activating assistance functions

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

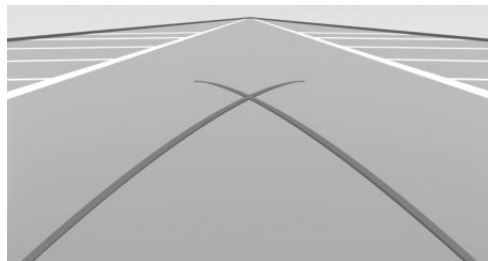
- ▶ Parking aid lines
 - P_{P} "Parking aid lines"
 - Lanes and turning radius are indicated.
- ▶ Obstacle marking
 - P_{A} "Obstacle marking"
 - Spatially-shaped markings are displayed.

Pathway lines



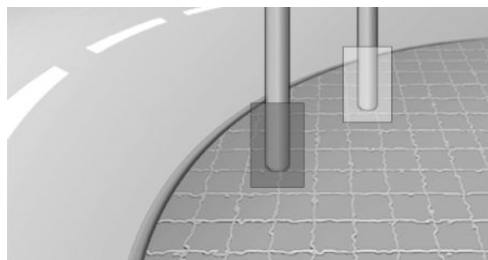
- ▶ Pathway lines can be superimposed on the image of the rearview camera.
- ▶ They help you to estimate how much space is needed when parking and maneuvering on level pavement.
- ▶ They are dependent on the current steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning circle lines



- ▶ Turning circle lines can only be superimposed on the rearview camera image together with pathway lines.
- ▶ They show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.
- ▶ Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Obstacle marking



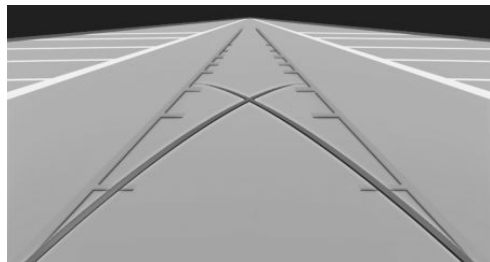
Obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC sensors and, when respectively equipped, detected by the rearview camera.

Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

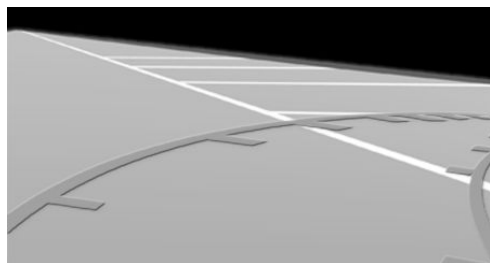
Their colored margins match the markings of the PDC. This simplifies estimation of the distance to the object shown.

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the turning radius lines lead to within the limits of the parking space.



2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.



Display settings

Brightness

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. ☀ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached, and press the controller.

Contrast

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. 🎛 Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached, and press the controller.

System limits

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Assistance functions also take into account data of the PDC.

Follow instructions in the PDC chapter, refer to page 137.

The objects displayed on the Control Display under certain circumstances are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

Top View

The concept

Top View provides assistance in parking and maneuvering. The area around the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

General information

The image is captured by two cameras integrated in the exterior mirrors, by the rear-view camera and a camera on the front of the vehicle.

The range is no more than approx. 6.5 ft/2 m to the side, front and rear.

Obstacles within this range are thus displayed early on the Control Display.

Hints



Check the traffic situation as well

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects that are not captured by the camera. ◀

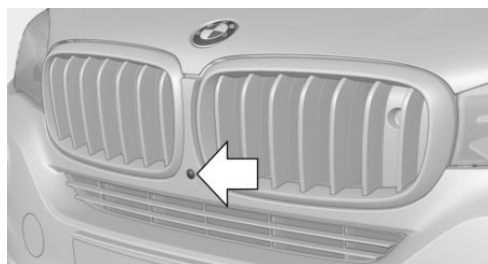
At a glance

Button in the vehicle

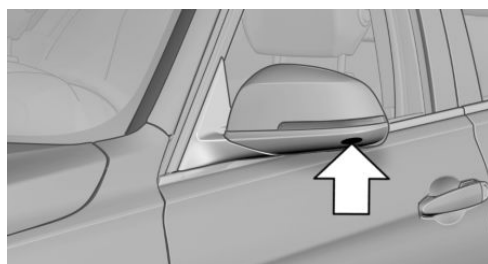


Top View

Cameras



Front camera



The lenses of the Top View cameras are located at the bottom of the exterior mirror housings. The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the lens, refer to page 228.

Functional requirements

Top View can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- ▷ With a door open.
- ▷ With the tailgate open.
- ▷ With an exterior mirror folded in.
- ▷ In poor light.

The unavailable camera range is depicted by shading.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

With the engine running, engage lever in position P R.

The rearview camera image is displayed. To switch to the Top View:

 "Rear view camera"

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if needed.

Switching on/off manually



Press button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

Top View is displayed.

The rearview camera image is displayed when the reverse gear is engaged by pressing the button.

Display

Display on the Control Display

The area surrounding the vehicle can be displayed on the Control Display.

The display appears as soon as Top View is activated.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, it is possible to reel to top view:

 "Rear view camera"

Brightness

With Top View switched on:

1.  Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached, and press the controller.

Contrast

With Top View switched on:

1.  Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached, and press the controller.

Displaying the turning radius and pathway lines

- ▶ The static, red turning radius line shows the space needed to the side of the vehicle when the steering wheel is turned all the way.
- ▶ The variable, green pathway line assists you in assessing the amount of space actually needed to the side of the vehicle. The lane line depends on the engaged gear and the current steering angle. The track line is continuously adjusted for the steering wheel movement.

 "Parking aid lines"

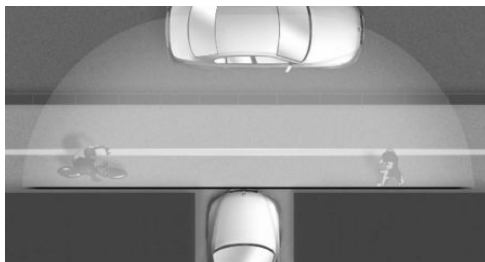
Turning circle and pathway lines are displayed.

System limits

A Check Control message is displayed when a camera is defective.

Side View

The concept



Side View provides an early look at cross traffic at blind driveways and intersections. Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. To improve the viewing, each camera, front and rear on the vehicle, detects the traffic area on the side.

Which camera is active is shown on the top edge of the screen.

Hints

The images of the cameras are displayed, depending on the gear selected, on the Control Display.



Check the traffic situation as well

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle on blind driveways and intersections with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside the picture areas of the Side View cameras. ◀

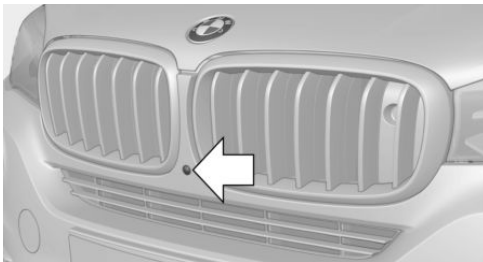
At a glance

Button in the vehicle

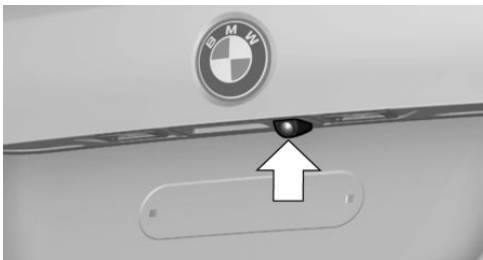


Side View

Cameras



Front camera



Rear camera

Two cameras are used for the detection.
The image quality may be impaired by dirt.
Clean the lens, refer to page [228](#).

Switching on/off

Switching on/off manually



Press button.

Depending on the transmission position, the picture of the front or rear camera is displayed.

Switching off automatically

By switching into a different function or when changing gears.

Front Side View: when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Display

General information

The traffic area in front of or behind the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.

Brightness

With the Side View switched on:

1. ☀ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached, and press the controller.

Contrast

With the Side View switched on:

1. ● Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached, and press the controller.

Warning of crossing traffic

The concept

When an object approaching from the side is detected by the front or rear camera, this is depicted by a symbol in the Side View display.

Requirements

- ▷ Side View switched on.

- ▷ Your vehicle moves no faster than walking speed.
- ▷ To detect approaching objects, sufficient brightness, e.g., daylight is necessary.

Display



The yellow symbol is displayed if an approaching vehicle is detected by the camera.



A gray symbol is displayed if crossing traffic cannot be detected.

System limits

In the following situations, the warning about crossing traffic may be limited:

- ▷ In poor lighting or visibility conditions.
- ▷ If the camera is soiled or covered.

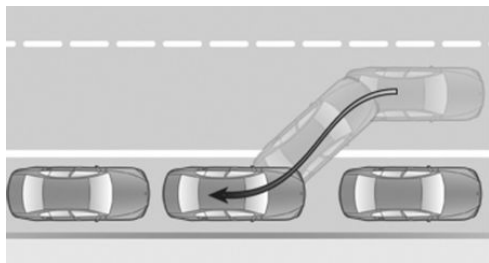
System limits

The objects displayed on the Control Display under certain circumstances are closer than they appear. Therefore, do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

The viewing angle is approx. 180°.

Parking assistant

The concept



This system assists the driver in parking parallel to the road.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and during the parking procedure takes control of steering, the acceleration and braking and if needed changes the gears. Hold down the parking assistant button for the duration of the parking procedure. At the end of the parking procedure, transmission position P is engaged.

When parking, also take note of the visual and acoustic information and instructions issued by the PDC, the parking assistant and the rear-view camera and react accordingly.

A component of the parking assistant is the PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page [137](#).

Hints



Personal responsibility

Even an active system does not relieve the driver from personal responsibility while driving.

Technically the system has its limits, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations.

Monitor your driving, be on the alert, observe the vehicle surroundings and other traffic and react when needed - risk of accident. ◀



Changes to the parking space

Changes to the parking space after it was measured are not taken into account by the system.

Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀



Transporting cargo

Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the system during the parking procedure.

Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀



Curbs

The parking assistant may steer the vehicle over or onto curb if need be.

Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, the wheels, tires, or the vehicle may become damaged. ◀

An engine that has been switched off by the Auto Start Stop function is restarted automatically when the parking assistant is activated.

Requirements

For measuring parking spaces

- ▷ Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- ▷ Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

- ▷ Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.
- ▷ Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 4 ft/1.2 m.
- ▷ Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Regarding the parking procedure

- ▷ Doors and tailgate closed.
- ▷ Parking brake released.
- ▷ Driver's safety belt fastened.

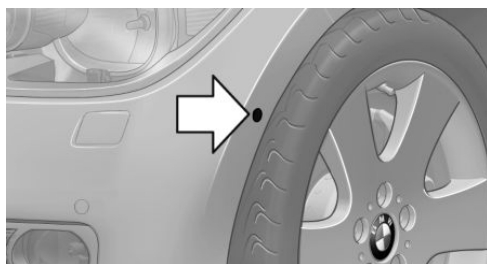
At a glance

Button in the vehicle



Parking assistant

Ultrasound sensors



The ultrasound sensors for measuring parking spaces are located on the side of the vehicle.

To ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.
- ▷ When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.
- ▷ Do not put stickers over sensors.

Switching on/off

Switching on with the button



Press button.

The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

Switching on with the reverse gear

Shift into reverse.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

To activate: "Parking Assistant"

Switch off

The system can be deactivated as follows:

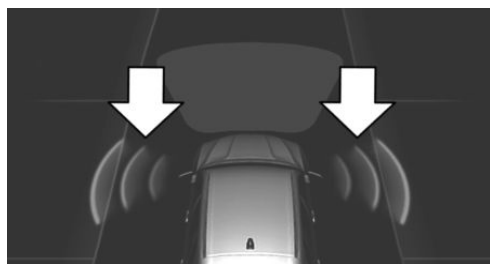
- ▷ Press button.

Display on the Control Display

System activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	The system is activated.

System status



- ▷ Colored symbols, see arrows, on the side of the vehicle illustrated. Parking assistant is activated and search for parking space active.
- ▷ Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When the parking assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted.
- ▷  The parking procedure is active. Steering control has been taken over by system.
- ▷ Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

Parking using the parking assistant



Check the traffic situation as well

Loud noises outside and inside the vehicle can drown out the parking assistant's and PDC's signals.

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes; otherwise, there is a danger of an accident. ◀

1. Switch on the parking assistant and activate it if needed.

The status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

2. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

The end of the parking procedure is indicated on the Control Display.

3. Adjust the parking position yourself if needed.

Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

- ▷  "Parking Assistant" Select the symbol on the Control Display.
- ▷  Press button.

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driver grasps the steering wheel or if he takes over steering.
- ▷ Possible on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
- ▷ When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome, such as curbs.
- ▷ When there are obstacles that suddenly arise.
- ▷ If the Park Distance Control PDC displays clearances that are too small.

- ▷ If a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- ▷ When switching to another function on the Control Display.
- ▷ When the button is released.
- ▷ If the tailgate is open.
- ▷ If doors are open.
- ▷ When setting the parking brake.
- ▷ During acceleration.
- ▷ When braking.
- ▷ When unfastening the driver's safety belt.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Flashing display on the selector lever

The actually engaged transmission position can deviate from the selector lever position in some situations after function interruption. The display in the selector lever flashes.

Observe the display in the instrument cluster, refer to page 80, in these cases.

Resume

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued if needed.

Follow the instructions on the Control Display to do this.

System limits

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- ▷ In tight curves.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- ▷ On slippery ground.
- ▷ On steep uphill or downhill grades.

- ▷ With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:

- ▷ For small children and animals.
- ▷ For persons with certain clothing, e.g. coats.
- ▷ With external interference of the ultrasound, e.g. from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- ▷ Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- ▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ With moving objects.
- ▷ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- ▷ With objects with corners and sharp edges.
- ▷ With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- ▷ For objects with porous surfaces.

Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

The parking assistant may identify parking spaces that are not suitable for parking.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked.

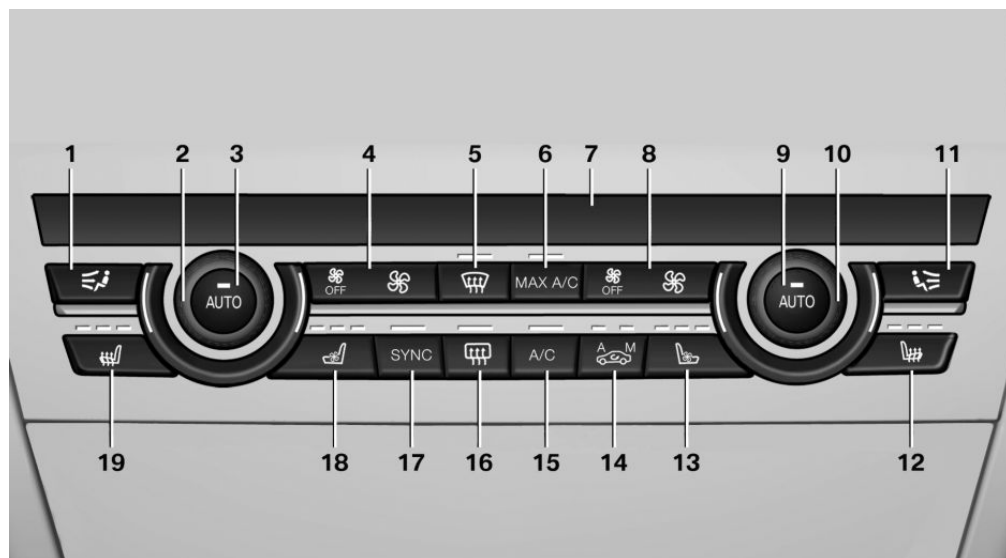
Climate control

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Automatic climate control



- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Air distribution, left | 11 Air distribution, right |
| 2 Temperature, left | 12 Seat heating, right 54 |
| 3 AUTO program, left | 13 Active seat ventilation, right 54 |
| 4 Air flow, AUTO intensity, left, residual heat | 14 Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode |
| 5 Remove ice and condensation | 15 Cooling function |
| 6 Maximum cooling | 16 Rear window defroster |
| 7 Display | 17 SYNC program |
| 8 Air flow, AUTO intensity, right | 18 Active seat ventilation, left 54 |
| 9 AUTO program, right | 19 Seat heating, left 54 |
| 10 Temperature, right | |

Hints



Sufficient ventilation

When remaining in the vehicle for an extended period of time, ensure sufficient external ventilation. Do not continuously use recirculated-air mode; otherwise the air quality in the interior continuously worsens. ◀

Climate control functions in detail

Manual air distribution



Press button repeatedly to select a program:

- Upper body region.
- Upper body region and footwell.
- Footwell.
- Windows and footwell.
- Windows, upper body region, and footwell.
- Windows: driver's side only.
- Windows and upper body region.

If the windows are fogged over, press the AUTO button on the driver's side to utilize the condensation sensor.

Temperature



Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control achieves this temperature as quickly as possible, if needed by using the maximum cooling or heating liability, and then keeps it constant.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

AUTO program



Press button.

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity program and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

The cooling function, refer to page 152, is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

Intensity of the AUTO program

With the AUTO program activated, the automatic intensity control can be changed.



Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase the intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Air flow, manual

To manually adjust air flow turn off AUTO program first.



Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Defrosts windows and removes condensation



Press button.

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

For this purpose, point the side vents onto the side windows as needed.

Adjust air flow with the program active.

If the windows are fogged over, you can also reel on the cooling function or press the AUTO button to utilize the condensation sensor.

Maximum cooling



Press button.

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and air circulation mode.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

The function is available above an external temperature of approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the engine running is indicated.

Adjust air flow with the program active.

Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

You may respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.



Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- ▷ LEDs off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Left LED on, automatic recirculated-air control: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts off automatically.
- ▷ Right LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

If the windows are fogged over, reel off the recirculated-air mode and press the AUTO button on the driver's side to utilize the condensa-

tion sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.



Sufficient ventilation

When remaining in the vehicle for an extended period of time, ensure sufficient external ventilation. Do not continuously use recirculated-air mode; otherwise the air quality in the interior continuously worsens. ◀

Cooling function

The car's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.



Press button.

The air will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and side windows may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 179, develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

Rear window defroster



Press button.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

SYNC program



The current settings on the driver's side for temperature, air flow, air distribution, and AUTO program are transferred to the front passenger side and to the left and right rear.

The program is switched off if the settings on the front passenger side or in the rear are changed.

Residual heat

The heat stored in the engine is used to heat the interior.

Functional requirement

- ▷ Up to 15 minutes after switching off the engine.
- ▷ Warm engine.
- ▷ The battery is sufficiently charged.
- ▷ External temperature below 77 °F/25 °C.

The availability of the function is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Switching on

1. Switch off the ignition.

2.  Press the right side of the button on the driver's side.

⏏ The symbol appears on the automatic climate Control Display.

The interior temperature, air volume and air distribution can be adjusted with the ignition switched on.

Switch off

At the lowest fan speed, press the left side of the button on the driver's side.

⏏ The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control flashes.

Switching the system on/off

Switch off

- ▷ Complete system:



Press and hold the left button on the driver's side until the control clicks off.

- ▷ On the front passenger side:



Press and hold the left button on the front passenger side.

Switching on

Press any button except:

- ▷ Rear window defroster.
- ▷ Left side of Air volume button.
- ▷ Seat ventilation.
- ▷ If necessary, SYNC program.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

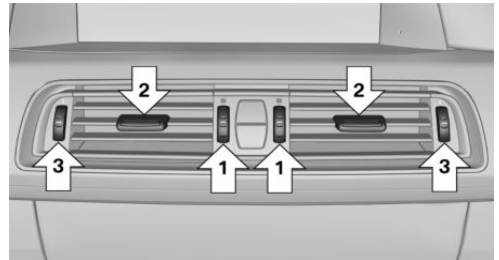
The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

The activated-charcoal filter removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air that enters the vehicle.

This combined filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance, refer to page 211, of your vehicle.

Ventilation

Front ventilation

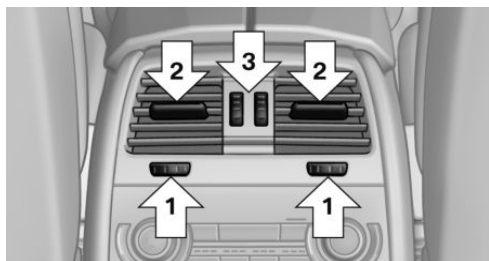


- ▷ Thumbwheels to vary the temperature in the upper body region, arrow 1.
Toward blue: colder.
Toward red: warmer.
The set interior temperature for the driver and passenger are not changed.
- ▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 2.
- ▷ Thumbwheels for opening and closing the vents continuously, arrows 3.

Adjusting the ventilation

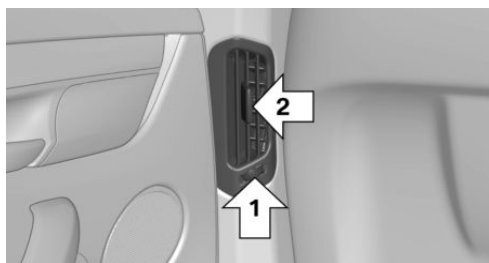
- ▷ Ventilation for cooling:
Direct vent in your direction when vehicle's interior is too hot.
- ▷ Draft-free ventilation:
Adjust the vent to let the air flow past you.

Ventilation in rear, center



- ▷ Thumbwheels to vary the temperature, arrow 1.
Toward blue: colder.
Toward red: warmer.
- ▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 2.
- ▷ Thumbwheels for continuous opening and closing of the vents, arrow 3.

BMW X5 M: ventilation, side



- ▷ Thumbwheel for continuous opening and closing of the vents, arrow 1.
- ▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 2.

Rear automatic climate control

At a glance



- 1 Temperature
- 2 AUTO program
- 3 Vent settings
- 4 Air flow, AUTO intensity
- 5 Display
- 6 Maximum cooling
- 7 Seat heating 55

Switching the rear automatic climate control on/off

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Rear climate"

The rear automatic climate control is not operational if the automatic climate control is switched off or if the function for defrosting or defogging the windows is active.

AUTO program

AUTO Press button.

Air flow, air distribution, and temperature are controlled automatically:

Depending on the selected temperature, the AUTO intensity, and outside influences, the air is directed to the upper body and into the footwell.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Intensity of the AUTO program

With the AUTO program activated, the automatic intensity control can be changed:



Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase the intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Temperature



Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control achieves this temperature as quickly as possible, if needed by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Manual air distribution

The air distribution can be adjusted to individual needs.



Press button repeatedly to select a program:

- ▷ Upper body region.
- ▷ Upper body region and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.

Air flow, manual

To manually adjust air flow turn off AUTO program first.



Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Switching the system on/off

Switch off



Press and hold the left button.

Switching on

Press any button except:

- ▷ Left side of Air volume button.
- ▷ Seat heating.

Maximum cooling



Press button.

The system is set to the lowest temperature, maximum air flow and air circulation mode.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

Air is cooled as quickly as possible:

- ▷ At an external temperature of approx. 32 °F/0 °C.
- ▷ When the engine is running.

Parked-car ventilation

The concept

The parked-car ventilation ventilates the vehicle interior and lowers its temperature, if needed.

The system can be switched on and off directly or by using two preset departure times.

The reel-on time is automatically determined based on the temperature. The system promptly switches on before the selected departure time.

Operation can be performed via iDrive.

Functional requirements

Parked-car ventilation

- ▷ When the departure time is preselected: depends on internal, external and set temperature.
- ▷ Direct operation: any external temperature.

Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate now"

 The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes if the system is switched on.

The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

Setting departure time

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. Select the departure time.
Turn the controller until the desired departure time field has been selected and press Controller.
4. Set the time.
Turn the controller until the desired time is set and press the controller.

Activating the departure time

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. Activating the desired departure time:
"for departure at"

 The symbol on the automatic climate control lights up when the departure time is activated.

 The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes when the system has been switched on.

The system will only be switched on within the next 24 hours. After that, it needs to be reactivated.

Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Universal Integrated Remote Control

The concept

The universal garage door opener can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives or lighting systems. The universal garage door opener replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior rearview mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.



During programming

During programming and before activating a device using the universal garage door opener, ensure that there are no people, animals or objects in the area of the remote-controlled device; otherwise, there is a risk of injury or damage.

Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter. ◀

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

Compatibility



If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the instructions of the system to be controlled, the system is gener-

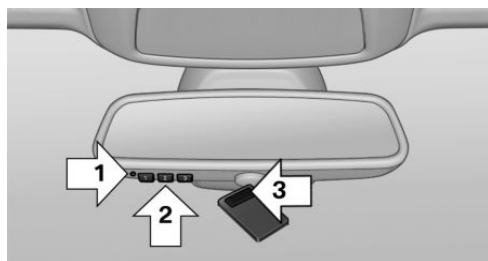
ally compatible with the universal garage door opener.

If you have any questions, please contact:

- ▷ Your service center.
- ▷ www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Control elements on the interior rearview mirror



- ▷ LED, arrow 1.
- ▷ Buttons, arrow 2.
- ▷ The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

Programming

General information

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Initial setup:

Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED on the interior rearview mirror flashes. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior rearview mirror.

3. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 in/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior

rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.

4. Simultaneously press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter and the button to be programmed on the interior rearview mirror. The LED on the interior rearview mirror will begin flashing slowly.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed. If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance between the interior rearview mirror and the hand-held transmitter and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

The systems can be controlled using the interior rearview mirror buttons.

Special feature of the alternating-code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features an alternating-code system.

Read the system's operating manual, or press the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror longer. If the LED on the interior rearview mirror starts flashing rapidly and then stays lit constantly for 2 seconds, the system features an alternating-code system. Flashing and continuous illumination of the LED will repeat for approximately 20 seconds.

For systems with an alternating-code system, the universal garage door opener and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the operating manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

To synchronize:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior rearview mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the interior rearview mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the interior rearview mirror LED starts flashing slowly, hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 in/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.
4. Likewise, press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the interior rearview mirror LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed. The system can

then be controlled by the button on the interior rearview mirror.

If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

Controls



Before operation

Before operating a system using the universal garage door opener, ensure that there are no people, animals, or objects within the range of movement of the remote-controlled system; otherwise, there is a risk of injury or damage.

Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter. ◀

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior rearview mirror while the engine is running or when the ignition is started. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior rearview mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting stored functions

Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED flashes rapidly. All stored functions are deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

Sun visor

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Glare shield from the side

Folding out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Unhook it from the holder and swing it to the side.
3. Move it back to the desired position.

Folding up

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

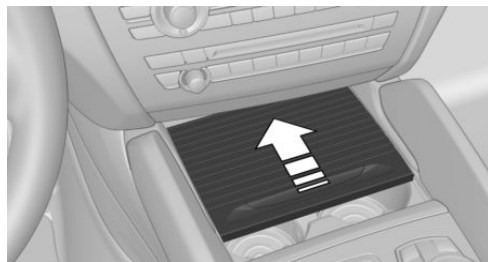
Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover. When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

Ashtray

Front

Opening



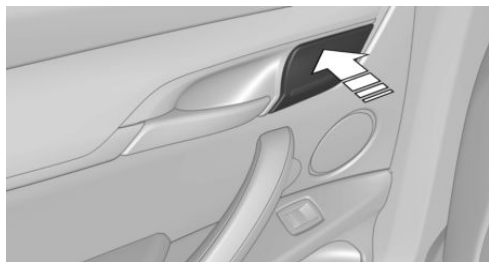
Slide the cover forward.

Emptying

Take out the insert.

Rear

Opening



Press on the cover.

Emptying

Take out the insert.

Lighter

Hints



Danger of burns

Only hold the hot lighter by its knob; otherwise, there is a danger of getting burned.

Switch off the ignition and take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children cannot use the lighter and burn themselves. ◀



Replace the cover after use

Reinsert the lighter or socket cover after use, otherwise objects may get into the lighter socket or fixture and cause a short circuit. ◀

Front

At a glance



The lighter is located next to the ashtray.

Controls



Push in the lighter.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

Rear

At a glance



The cigarette lighter is located in the rear center console.

Controls



Push in the lighter.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

Connecting electrical devices

Hints



Do not connect charging devices to the 12 volt socket in the vehicle

Do not connect battery chargers to the factory-installed 12 volt sockets in the vehicle as this may damage the vehicle battery due to an increased power consumption. ◀



Replace the cover after use

Reinsert the lighter or socket cover after use, otherwise objects may get into the lighter socket or fixture and cause a short circuit. ◀

Sockets

General information

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment while the engine is running or when the ignition is switched on.

Note

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable connectors.

Front center console



Slide the cover forward.

Remove the cover or cigarette lighter.

Center armrest



Remove the cover.

Rear center console



Remove the cover or cigarette lighter.

In the cargo area



Fold open the cover.

USB interface for data transfer

The concept

Connection for importing and exporting data on USB devices, e.g.:

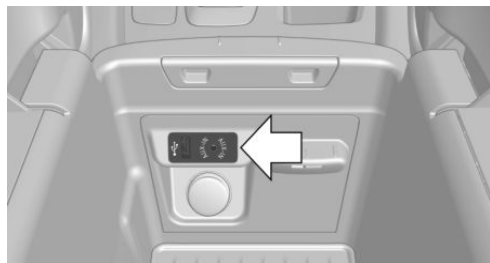
- ▷ Personal Profile settings, refer to page 35.
- ▷ Music collection, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication.

Hints

Observe the following when connecting:

- ▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
- ▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lights to the USB interface.
- ▷ Do not connect USB hard drives.
- ▷ Do not use the USB interface for recharging external devices.

With navigation system Professional or TV: at a glance



The USB interface is located in the center armrest.

Rear cooler

Note



Immediately close cooler again

Close the cooler immediately after use while driving; otherwise, injury may occur during accidents. ◀

Folding down the middle section



Reach into the recess and pull forward.

Opening



Pull on the opener and fold the cooler forward.

Switching on

The cooler can be operated at two levels.

1. Switch on the ignition.



2. Press button once for each cooling level.

The highest cooling power is active when two LEDs are lit.

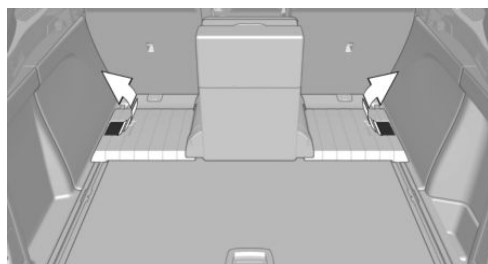
If the cooler was switched on the last time the ignition was switched on, it will likewise be switched on the next time the ignition is switched on.

Switch off

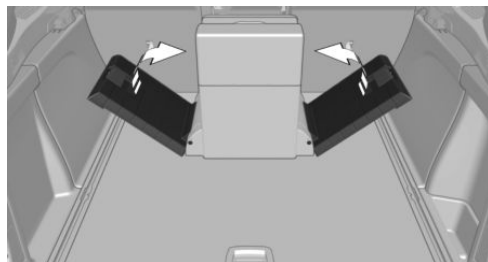
Press button repeatedly until the LEDs go out.

Removing

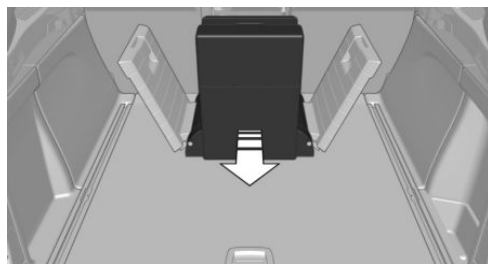
1. Pull handles on both sides, arrows.



2. Fold both release levers up.

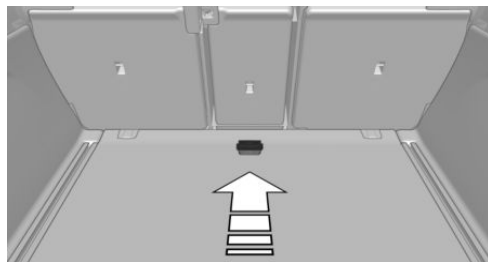


3. Pull cooler downward and remove it.

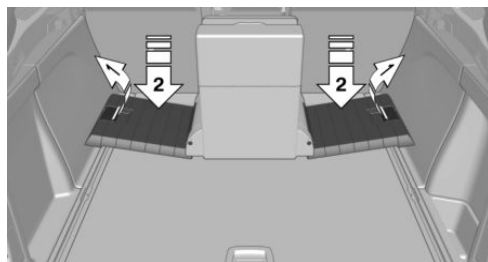


Installing

1. Push the cooler forward onto the contact up to the stop.



2. Fold both release levers down.
3. Pull handles, arrows 1, and press the release levers, arrows 2, into the rails, until they latch.



Malfunction

The cooler cannot be switched on or switches off, e.g., when the cooling system overheats or if the battery voltage is low. One of the LEDs flashes.

Remedy the problem

1. If necessary, allow the refrigerator cooling system to cool down.
2. Start the engine.
3. Switch on cooler.

If the LED flashes even after a short time, have the cooler checked by the service center.

BMW X5 M: cargo area

Cargo cover

Hints



Hook the cargo cover on both sides

Hook the cargo cover on both sides to prevent damaging the cover. ◀



Do not deposit heavy objects

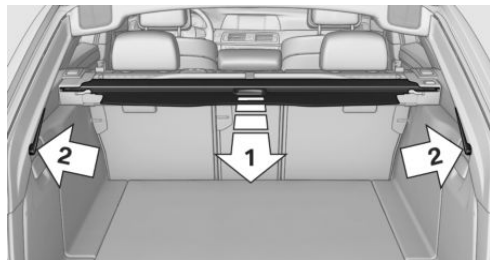
Do not deposit heavy or hard objects on the cargo cover. Otherwise, they may pose a risk to occupants, such as during braking and evasive maneuvers. ◀



Do not let the cargo cover snap back into place

Do not allow the cargo cover to snap back into place; this can damage it. ◀

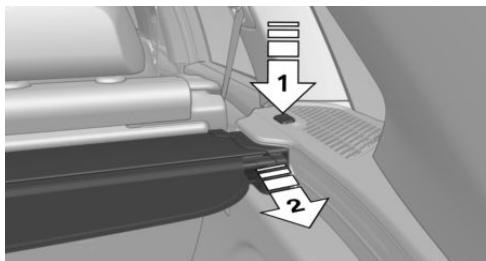
Attaching



1. Remove cargo cover, arrow 1.
2. Hook cargo cover into the brackets on both sides, arrow 2

Removing

The cover can be removed to load bulky luggage.



1. Press button, arrow 1, to unlock the cover.
2. Pull the cover back, arrow 2.

Installing

Slide the cover forward horizontally into the two side brackets until it audibly latches. The red warning fields disappear. Tug on the cover to check if it is properly locked in place.

Enlarging the cargo area

General information

The cargo area can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrest.

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The sides and the middle section can be folded down separately.

Hints



Danger of jamming

Before folding down the rear seat backrests, ensure that the area of movement of the backrests is clear. In particular, ensure that no one is located in or reaches into the area of movement of the rear seat backrests when the middle section is folded down. Otherwise, injury or damage may result. ◀



Ensuring the stability of the child seat

When installing child restraint systems, make sure that the child seat is securely fastened to the backrest of the seat. Angle and headrest of the backrest might need to be adjusted or possibly be removed. Make sure that all backrests are securely locked. Otherwise

the stability of the child seat can be affected, and there is an increased risk of injury because of unexpected movement of the rear seat backrest. ◀

! Ensure that the lock is securely engaged

When you fold back the backrest make sure that it locks in place. When this happens the red warning field on the seat disappears. Otherwise transported cargo could shoot into the car's interior during braking or evasive maneuvers and endanger occupants. ◀

! Using the middle safety belt

If the middle safety belt in the rear is used, the larger side of the backrest must be locked. Otherwise, the safety belt will not have a restraining effect. ◀

Folding down the sides

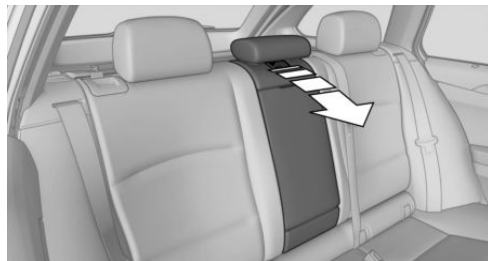
! Move the front seats to an upright position

Before folding down the rear backrests, ensure that the front seats are moved forward slightly and are in an upright position. Otherwise, the head restraint and screen could be damaged. ◀



Reach into the recess and pull forward.

Folding down the middle section



Reach into the recess and pull forward.

Cargo area partition net

Note

! Do not let the cargo area partition net back into place

Do not allow the cargo area partition net to snap back into place; otherwise, there is a danger of injury and the cargo area partition net could be damaged. ◀

Hooking in

1. Fold open the rear covers on the roofliner.
2. Pull the cargo area partition net out of the case by the strap.
3. Insert the bars into the brackets on both sides in the roofliner toward the front, arrow. This is best performed from the rear seat.



Lowering

1. Hold the rod on both side and release it from the brackets.
2. Slowly slide the cargo area partition net into the case.

BMW X6 M: cargo area

Cargo cover

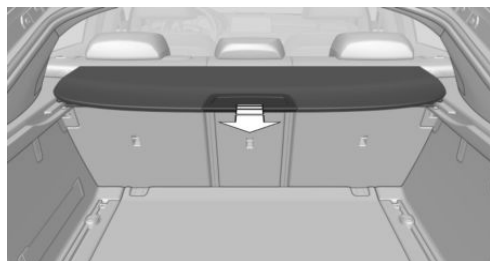
Note



Do not deposit heavy objects

Do not deposit heavy or hard objects on the cargo cover. Otherwise, they may pose a risk to occupants, such as during braking and evasive maneuvers. ◀

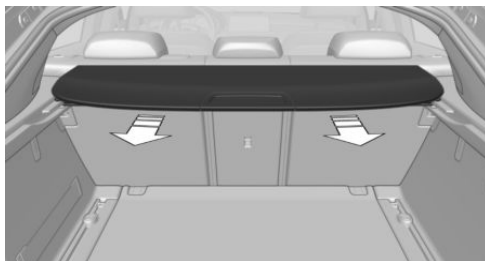
General information



Unfold cargo cover out towards the rear.

Removing

The cover can be removed to load bulky luggage.



1. Grasp folded-up cargo cover under the top fold on both sides.
2. Pull the cover rearward out of the two side brackets.

Installing

When installing, follow the reverse procedure.

1. Put the cargo cover in place left and right.
2. Lift the cover slightly to the rear and push toward the front until it engages on both side brackets.

Enlarging the cargo area

General information

The cargo area can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrest.

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The sides and the middle section can be folded down separately.

Hints



Danger of jamming

Before folding down the rear seat backrests, ensure that the area of movement of the backrests is clear. In particular, ensure that no one is located in or reaches into the area of movement of the rear seat backrests when the middle section is folded down. Otherwise, injury or damage may result. ◀

**Ensuring the stability of the child seat**

When installing child restraint systems, make sure that the child seat is securely fastened to the backrest of the seat. Angle and headrest of the backrest might need to be adjusted or possibly be removed. Make sure that all backrests are securely locked. Otherwise the stability of the child seat can be affected, and there is an increased risk of injury because of unexpected movement of the rear seat backrest. ◀

**Ensure that the lock is securely engaged**

When you fold back the backrest make sure that it locks in place. When this happens the red warning field on the seat disappears. Otherwise transported cargo could shoot into the car's interior during braking or evasive maneuvers and endanger occupants. ◀

**Using the middle safety belt**

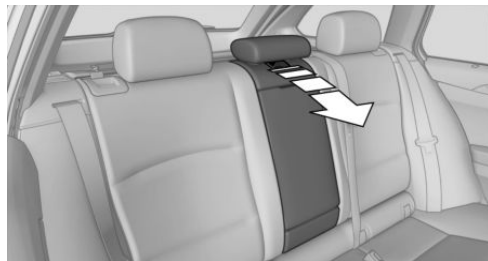
If the middle safety belt in the rear is used, the larger side of the backrest must be locked. Otherwise, the safety belt will not have a restraining effect. ◀

Folding down the sides**Move the front seats to an upright position**

Before folding down the rear backrests, ensure that the front seats are moved forward slightly and are in an upright position. Otherwise, the head restraint and screen could be damaged. ◀



Reach into the recess and pull forward.

Folding down the middle section

Reach into the recess and pull forward.

Ski and snowboard bag**General information**

The ski and snowboard bag is contained in a protective jacket in the cargo area.

Follow the installation and operation instructions included in the protective jacket.

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Hints



No loose objects in the car's interior

Do not stow any objects in the car's interior without securing them; otherwise, they may present a danger to occupants e.g., during braking and evasive maneuvers. ◀



Do not place anti-slip mats on the dashboard

Do not place anti-slip mats on the dashboard. The mat materials could damage the dashboard. ◀

Storage compartments

The following storage compartments are available in the vehicle interior:

- ▷ Glove compartment on the front passenger side, refer to page 168.
- ▷ Glove compartment on the driver's side, refer to page 169.
- ▷ Compartments in the doors, refer to page 169.
- ▷ Storage compartment on the center armrest, refer to page 169.
- ▷ Center armrest, refer to page 169.
- ▷ Glasses compartment, refer to page 170.

Glove compartment

Front passenger side

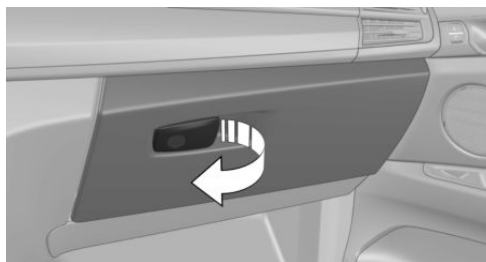
Note



Close the glove compartment again immediately

Close the glove compartment immediately after use while driving; otherwise, injury may occur during accidents. ◀

Opening



Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Locking

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove compartment.

After the glove compartment is locked, the remote control can be handed over, such as at a hotel, without the integrated key.

Driver's side

Note



Close the glove compartment again immediately

Close the glove compartment immediately after use while driving; otherwise, injury may occur during accidents. ◀

Opening



Pull the handle.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Compartments in the doors



Do not stow any breakable objects

Do not store any breakable objects, e. g. glass bottles, in the compartments, or there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. ◀

Storage compartment on the center console

Opening



Slide the cover forward.

Closing

Slide the cover rearward.

Small storage compartment



Storage possibility for small objects, e.g., coins.

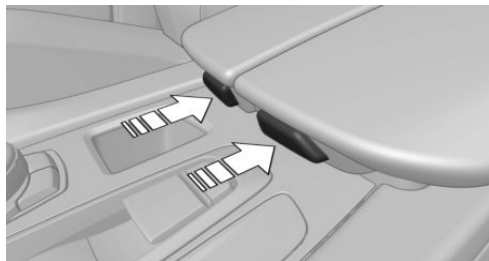
Center armrest

Front

At a glance

Located in the center armrest between the front seats is a storage compartment and depending on how the vehicle is equipped also an elastic band on the left side and a cover for the snap-in adapter.

Opening



Push the cover down slightly and press the button, see arrow. The respective cover folds up.

Closing

Fold the respective cover down until it latches.

Connection for an external audio device



An external audio device, e.g., an MP3 player, can be connected via the AUX-IN port or the USB audio interface in the center armrest.

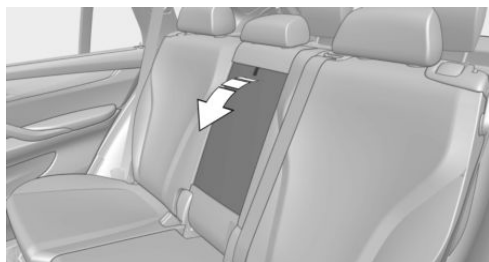
BMW X6 M: rear

At a glance

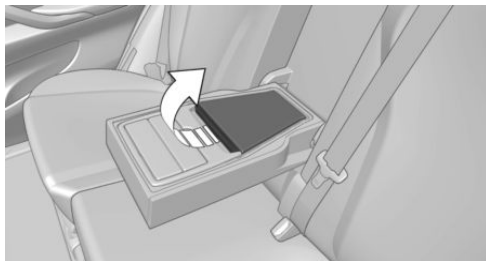
A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening

1. Pull the loop and fold down the center armrest.



2. Pull the handle.



Closing

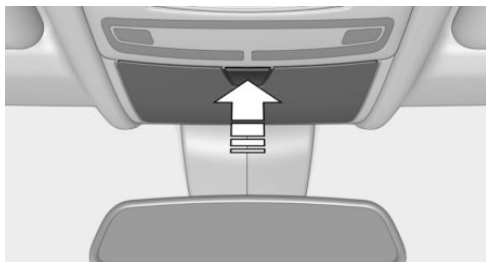
Press cover down until it latches.

Glasses compartment

At a glance

The compartment for eye glasses is located between the interior mirror and interior lights.

Opening



Press button.

Closing

Press the cover up until it latches.

Cupholders

Hints

 Shatter-proof containers and no hot drinks

Use light and shatter-proof containers and do not transport hot drinks. Otherwise, there is the increased danger of injury in an accident.◀

 Unsuitable containers

Do not forcefully push unsuitable containers into the cupholders. This may result in damage.◀

Front

At a glance

In the center console.



Slide the cover forward.



Two cupholders are located in the center console.

Rear

Note

 Pushing back the covers

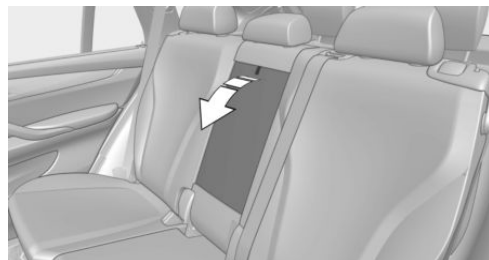
Push back the covers before folding up the center armrest; otherwise, the cupholder could become damaged.◀

At a glance

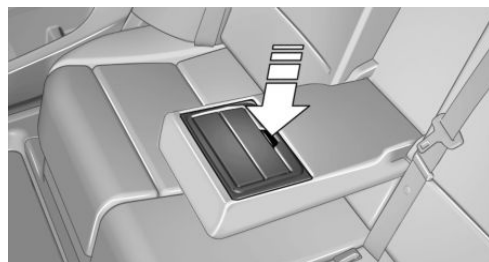
In the center armrest.

Opening

1. Pull the loop and fold down the center armrest.



2. Press button.



Closing

Press both covers inward back against each other.

Clothes hooks



Do not obstruct view

When suspending clothing from the hooks, ensure that it will not obstruct the driver's view. ◀



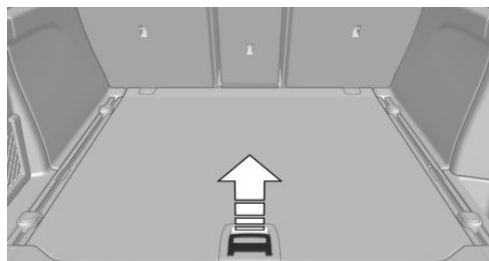
No heavy objects

Do not hang heavy objects from the hooks; otherwise, they may present a danger to passengers during braking and evasive maneuvers. ◀

The clothes hooks are located in the grab handles in the rear.

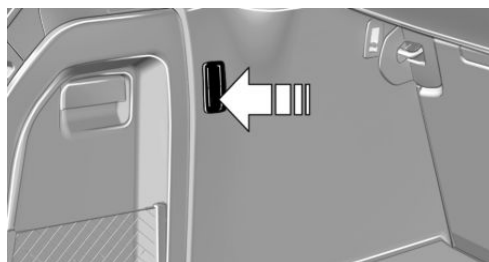
Storage compartments in the cargo area

Storage space under cargo floor panel



Fold up the cargo floor panel. The storage space under the cargo floor panel is subdivided.

Hooks/multi-function hook



Multi-function hooks are available on the left and right cargo area walls.

Retaining strap

A retaining strap is available on the left side trim for fastening small objects.

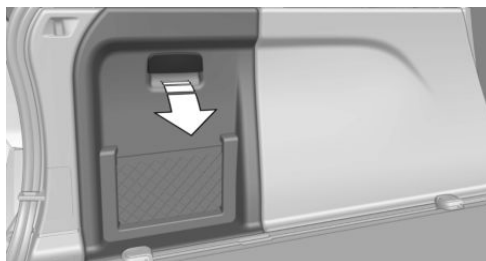
Net

Smaller objects can be stored in the net on the left side of the cargo area.

Storage compartment on the right side

A waterproof storage compartment is available on the right side of the cargo area.

Left side storage compartment



Pull the handle.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area with rail

To secure the cargo, refer to page 182, there are lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Cargo net, FlexNet

To secure the cargo, refer to page 182, the flexible cargo net can also be used.





Driving tips

This chapter provides you with information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating modes.

BMW X5 M and BMW X6 M Technology

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

V8 high-performance engine

The high-performance V8 engine gets maximum power of 423 kW and maximum torque of 750 Nm from a displacement of 4.4 liters. With its spontaneous response behavior, a speed range of wide utility results. The maximum engine speed is 6,800 rpm and is electronically controlled. Because of the high engine dynamics, the maximum engine speed with the vehicle stationary is reduced.

Warm-up

During the engine warm-up phase, the V8 high-performance engine has a somewhat rougher running behavior because of the emission controls.

When the engine is cold, the exhaust system has a slightly metallic undertone due to the nature of the system.

For more information about the warm-up procedure: Engine speed, refer to page 89, and engine oil temperature, refer to page 89.

Compound brake

The high-performance braking system has perforated compound brake discs.

Because of particular structural characteristics, there may be operation-related noises during braking. However, this has no effect on per-

formance, operational reliability and reliability of the brake.

Correct braking

To keep the brake system in optimum condition, it is expedient to apply them at regular intervals corresponding to the vehicle character.

Drivetrain

The xDrive all-wheel-drive system establishes a permanent variable torque distribution to the front and rear axles. The combination of xDrive and Dynamic Performance Control in this vehicle ensures a high degree of driving dynamics typical for BMW M.

With the activation of the M Dynamic mode, dynamics and steering precision can be increased even more in all speed ranges.

Driving on racetracks

Requirements

Before driving on a racetrack:

- ▷ Participation in BMW Driver Experience Training.
- ▷ Check engine oil fill level and replenish as necessary.
- ▷ Have vehicle checked at a service center.

Hints

Racetrack operation leads to increased wear. The vehicle is not designed for motorsports competitive use. This wear is not covered by the warranty.

The standard brake linings and the wear indicators are not designed for racetrack operation. For more information and advice, contact your service center.

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Breaking-in period

General information

Moving parts need time to adjust to one another (break-in time).

The following instructions will help accomplish a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control, refer to page 82.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Always obey the official speed limit.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed 5,500 rpm and 106 mph/170 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

At 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Have drive-in checkup maintenance performed.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km to 3,100 miles/5,000 km

The engine and road speed can gradually be increased to a constant speed of 137 mph/220 km/h.

Use the maximum speed of 155 mph/250 km/h only briefly, e.g., when passing.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

M Compound brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimal performance between brake discs and brake pads. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Following part replacement

The same break-in procedures should be observed if any of the components above-mentioned have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

General driving notes

Closing the tailgate



Drive with the tailgate closed

Only drive with the tailgate closed; otherwise, in the event of an accident or braking and evasive maneuvers, passengers and other traffic may be injured, and the vehicle may be damaged. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle interior. ◀

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- ▷ Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- ▷ Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust system



Hot exhaust system

High temperatures are generated in the exhaust system.

Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that flammable materials, e. g. hay, leaves, grass, etc. do not come in contact with the hot exhaust system while driving, while in idle position mode, or when parked. Such contact could lead to a fire, resulting in an increased risk of serious personal injury as well as property damage.

Do not touch hot exhaust pipes; otherwise, there is a danger of getting burned. ◀

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle



Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

It is not recommended to use mobile phones, such as mobile phones, in the vehicle interior without a direct connection to an external aerial. Otherwise, the vehicle's electronics and mobile communication devices can interfere with each other. In addition, there is no assurance that the radiation generated during transmission will be conducted away from the vehicle interior. ◀

Hydroplaning



Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce your speed to prevent hydroplaning. ◀

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water



Observe water level and speed

Do not exceed the maximum water level and maximum speed; otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged. ◀

Drive through calm water only and only if it is not deeper than 17.6 inches/45 cm and at this height, no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Braking safely

Your vehicle is equipped with ABS as a standard feature.

Applying the brakes fully is the most effective way of braking in situations needed.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

The pulsing of the brake pedal indicates that ABS is in its active mode.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can cause functional problems. However, this has no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

Objects within the range of movement of the pedals



No objects in the area around the pedals

Keep floor mats, carpets, and any other objects out of the pedal area; otherwise, the function of the pedals could be impeded while driving and create the risk of an accident.

Do not place additional floor mats over existing mats or other objects.

Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be properly attached to floor.

Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed for cleaning, e.g. ◀

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, press brake pedal ever so gently every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated in this process helps dry the brake discs and pads.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills



Avoid stressing the brakes

Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system. Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. ◀



Do not drive in neutral

Do not drive in neutral or with the engine stopped, as doing so disables engine braking. In addition, steering and brake assist are unavailable with the engine stopped. ◀

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking efforts. Otherwise the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down in sequential mode, refer to page 79.

Brake disc corrosion

Brake disc corrosion and contamination of the brake pads are favored by:

- ▷ Low mileage.
- ▷ Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- ▷ Infrequent use of the brakes.

Corrosion will built up when the maximum pressure applied to the brake pads during braking is not reached - thus discs don't get cleaned.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally that cannot be corrected.

Condensation under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops collecting underneath the vehicle.

These traces of water under the vehicle are normal.

Ground clearance



Ground clearance

Make sure that ground clearance is sufficient, e.g. when entering into underground car parking garages, driving over curbs; otherwise damage to the front or rear spoiler may occur. ◀

Driving on poor roads

The vehicle connects four wheel drive to the advantages of a normal truck



Do not drive on unpaved terrain

Do not drive on unpaved terrain; otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged. ◀

For your own safety, for the safety of passengers and of the vehicle, heed the following points:

- ▷ Become familiar with the vehicle before starting a trip; do not take risks in driving.
- ▷ Adjust the speed to the road surface conditions. The steeper and more uneven the road surface, the slower the speed should be.
- ▷ When driving on steep uphill or downhill grades: add engine oil and coolant up to near the MAX mark. Uphill and downhill grades can be traveled up to no more than 50 %.

- ▷ On steep downhill grades, use Hill Descent Control HDC, refer to page 132.

Starting out is possible on uphill grades up to 32 %. The permissible side tilt is 50 %.

- ▷ Avoid that the chassis bottom coming in contact with the ground.

The ground clearance is no more than 7.8 inches/20 cm and can vary according to the vehicle's load.

- ▷ When wheels continue to spin, depress the accelerator so that driving stability control systems can distribute the driving force to the wheels. Activate DTC Dynamic Traction Control if available.

After a trip on poor roads

After a trip on poor roads, check wheels and tires for damage to maintain driving safety.

Clear heavy soiling from the body.

Loading

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Hints



Overloading the vehicle

To avoid exceeding the approved capacity of the tires, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. This could result in a sudden loss of tire inflation pressure.◀



No fluids in the cargo area

Make sure that fluids do not leak into the cargo area; otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged.◀



Heavy and hard objects

Do not stow any heavy and hard objects in the car's interior without securing them; otherwise, they may present a danger to occupants, e.g., during braking and evasive maneuvers.◀

vehicle and unstable driving situations may result.



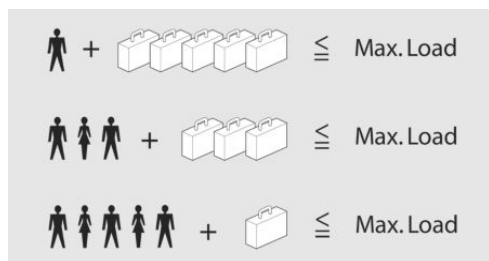
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or YYY pounds.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

For example, if the YYY amount equals 1,000 lbs and there will be four 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 400 lbs: 1,000 lbs minus 600 lbs = 400 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

Determining the load limit

1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard:
 - ▷ The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or YYY lbs. Otherwise, damage to the

Load



The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

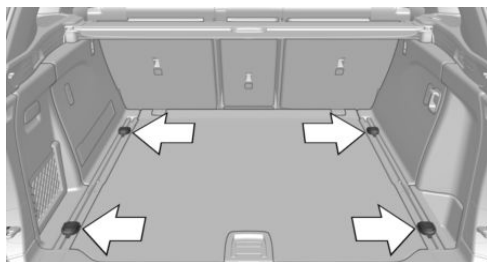
The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing cargo

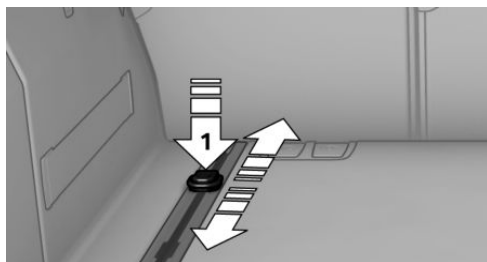
- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- ▷ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- ▷ Very heavy cargo: when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- ▷ If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow cargo.
- ▷ Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.
- ▷ Use the cargo area partition net, refer to page 165, to protect passengers. Make sure that objects cannot penetrate the cargo area partition net.

Securing cargo

Lashing eyes in the cargo area with rails



To secure the cargo, there are four movable lashing eyes in the cargo area.



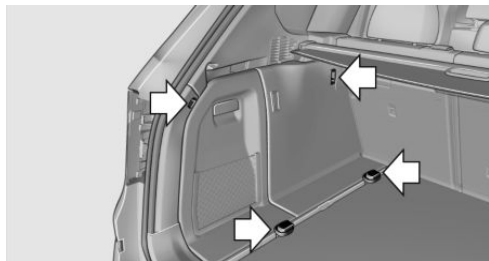
To slide the lashing eyes, press the button, arrow 1. Make sure that the lashing eyes latch at the new position.

The lashing eyes at the openings in the rails can be removed.

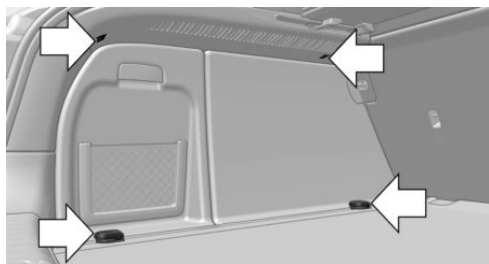
Cargo net, FlexNet

The flexible cargo net is hooked into eyes and secures the cargo in the cargo area. The storage net can be attached to the following eyes:

BMW X5 M:



BMW X6 M:



- ▷ Lashing eyes in the rails.
- ▷ Eyes on the cargo area wall.

The eyes are located on both sides of the cargo area.

Securing cargo

- ▷ Smaller and lighter items: secure with retaining straps or with a cargo net or draw straps.
 - ▷ Larger and heavy objects: secure with cargo straps.
- Cargo straps, cargo netting, retaining straps or draw straps on the lashing eyes in the cargo area.



Securing cargo

Stow and secure the cargo as described above; otherwise it may present a danger to the occupants, e.g., during braking and evasive maneuvers. ◀

Roof-mounted luggage rack

Note



Do not deactivate DSC when driving with roof load

Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with roof load, e.g. roof-mounted luggage rack.

Otherwise, driving safety is not given in driving-critical situation due to the elevated center of gravity. ◀

Installation only possible with roof rack.

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

Securing

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Loading

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- ▷ Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- ▷ The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- ▷ Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- ▷ Secure the roof luggage firmly, e.g., tie with ratchet straps.
- ▷ Do not let objects project into the opening path of the tailgate.

- ▷ Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

General information

Your vehicle contains advanced technology for the reduction of fuel consumption and emissions.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

Carrying out certain measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts following use

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass sunroof

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and thereby reduces the range.

Tires

General information

Tires can affect fuel consumption in various ways, e.g., tire size may influence fuel consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

Drive away immediately

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the quickest way of warming the cold engine up to operating temperature.

Look well ahead when driving

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid high engine speeds

As a rule: driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

Use 1st gear to get the vehicle moving. Starting with the 2nd gear, accelerate rapidly. When accelerating, shift up before reaching high engine speeds.

When you reach the desired speed, shift into the highest applicable gear and drive with the engine speed as low as possible and at a constant speed.

If necessary, observe the gear shift indicator of the vehicle, refer to page 93.

Use coasting

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switch off the engine during longer stops, e.g., at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of your vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style,

road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and reduce the range, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Reel off these functions if they are not needed.

Have maintenance carried out

Have vehicles maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and operating life. The maintenance should be carried out by your service center.

Also note the BMW Maintenance System, refer to page 211.





Mobility

In order to always ensure your mobility, you will find important information on operating fluids, wheels and tires, maintenance and Roadside Assistance in the following.

Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Hints



Refuel promptly

Refuel no later than at a range of 30 miles/50 km or engine operation might fail and damage might occur. ◀

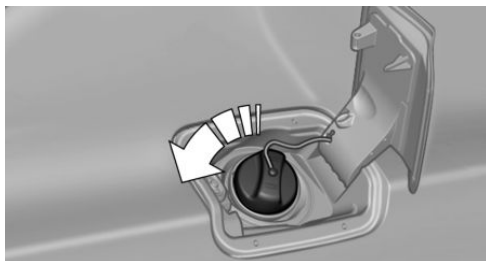
Fuel lid

Opening

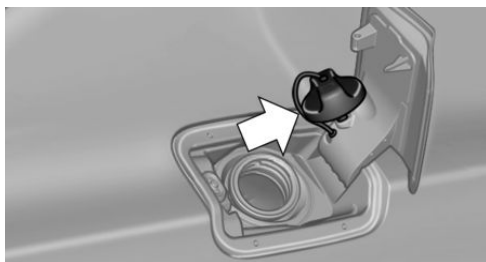
1. Briefly press the rear edge of the fuel filler flap.



2. Turn the tank lid counterclockwise.



3. Place the tank lid in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



Closing

1. Fit the lid and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Close the fuel filler flap.



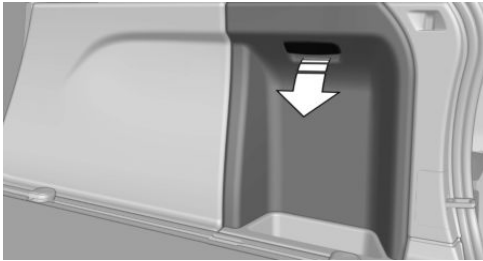
Do not pinch the retaining strap

Do not pinch the retaining strap attached to the lid; otherwise, the lid cannot be closed properly and fuel vapors can escape. ◀

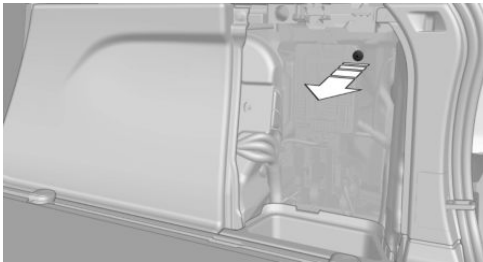
Manually unlocking fuel filler flap

In the event of an electrical malfunction, e.g. The release is located in the cargo area.

1. Open the cover on the right side trim.



2. Pull the green knob with the fuel pump symbol. This releases the fuel filler flap.



Observe the following when refueling

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.



Do not overfill the fuel tank

Do not overfill the fuel tank; otherwise fuel may eslide, causing harm to the environment and damaging the vehicle.◀



Handling fuels

Observe safety regulations posted at the gas station.◀

Fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Fuel recommendation

Note



General fuel quality

Even fuels that conform to the specifications can be of low quality. This may cause engine problems, for instance poor engine start-up behavior, poor handling and/or poor performance. Switch gas stations or use a brand name fuel with a higher octane rating.◀

Gasoline

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.



Refuel only with unleaded gasoline without metallic additives.

Do not refuel with any leaded gasoline or gasoline with metallic additives, e. g. manganese or iron, as this can cause permanent damage to the catalytic converter and other components.◀

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 10 %, i. e., E10, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should satisfy the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806-xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511-xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.



Do not use a fuel with a higher percentage of ethanol

Do not use a fuel with a higher ethanol percentage than recommended or one with other types of alcohol, e.g. M5 to M100; otherwise this could damage the engine and fuel supply system.◀

Recommended fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 93.

Minimum fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 91.



Minimum fuel grade

Do not use any gasoline below the minimum fuel grade as this may impair engine performance.◀

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.



Fuel quality

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from BP or Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.◀

BMW recommends BP fuels 

Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Tire inflation pressure

Safety information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- ▷ The service life of the tires.
- ▷ Road safety.
- ▷ Driving comfort.

Checking the tire inflation pressure



Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed: at least twice a month and before a long trip. If you fail to observe this precaution, you may be driving on tires with incorrect tire pressures, a condition that may not only compromise your vehicle's driving stability, but also lead to tire damage and the risk of an accident. ◀

Also check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

Tires heat up while driving, and the tire inflation pressure increases along with the tire's temperature. The tire inflation pressure specifications relate to cold tires or tires with the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after driving no more than 1.25 miles/2 km or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours.

The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 1.45 psi/0.1 bar.

For Flat Tire Monitor: after correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

For Tire Pressure Monitor: after correcting the tire inflation pressure, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Tire inflation pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 195, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. Tire inflation pressure specifications apply to approved tire sizes and recommended tire brands. This information can be obtained from your service center.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- ▷ Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- ▷ Maximum permitted driving speed.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 195, and adjust as necessary.



These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.



Maximum permissible speed

Do not exceed 100 mph/160 km/h; otherwise, tire damage and accidents may result. ◀

Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

X5 M

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
285/40 R 20 108 V M+S XL	2.5 / 36	2.2 / 31
Front: 285/40 R 20 104 Y	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 325/35 R 20 108 Y	-	2.5 / 36

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 285/35 R 21 105 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 325/30 R 21 108 Y XL	-	2.5 / 36
Emergency wheel: T 155/80 R 19 114 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	

X6 M

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
285/40 R 20 108 V M+S XL	2.5 / 36	2.2 / 31
Front: 285/40 R 20 104 Y	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 325/35 R 20 108 Y	-	2.5 / 36
Front: 285/35 R 21 105 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 325/30 R 21 108 Y XL	-	2.5 / 36
Emergency wheel: T 155/80 R 19 114 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h



Speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h
In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur. ◀

Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

X5 M

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
285/40 R 20 108 V M+S XL	2.9 / 42	2.9 / 42
Front: 285/40 R 20 104 Y	2.7 / 36	-
Rear: 325/35 R 20 108 Y	-	2.7 / 36
Front: 285/35 R 21 105 Y XL	3.0 / 43	-
Rear: 325/30 R 21 108 Y XL	-	3,1 / 44
Emergency wheel: T 155/80 R 19 114 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
	4.2 / 60	

X6 M

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
285/40 R 20 108 V M+S XL	2.9 / 42	2.9 / 42
Front: 285/40 R 20 104 Y	2.7 / 36	-
Rear: 325/35 R 20 108 Y	-	2.7 / 36
Front: 285/35 R 21 105 Y XL	3.0 / 44	-
Rear: 325/30 R 21 108 Y XL	-	3,1 / 44
Emergency wheel: T 155/80 R 19 114 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
	4.2 / 60	

Tire identification marks

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load rating, not for ZR tires

Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Speed letter

Q = up to 100 mph, 160 km/h

R = up to 106 mph, 170 km/h

S = up to 112 mph, 180 km/h

T = up to 118 mph, 190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph, 210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph, 240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph, 270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph, 300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 4314

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

4314: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

DOT ... 4314: the tire was manufactured in the 43th week of 2014.

Recommendation

Regardless of wear and tear, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified gov-

ernment test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



Temperature grade for this tire

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or

in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

If necessary, have the vehicle towed. ◀

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

Tire tread

Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

There is an increased danger of hydroplaning if the tire tread depth is less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.16 in/4 mm.

Below a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm, tires are less suitable for winter operation.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire's circumference and have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

They are marked on the side of the tire with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tire damage

General information

Inspect your tires often for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Hints

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle defects:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations while driving.
- ▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can, e. g., be caused by driving over curbs, road damage, or similar things.



In case of tire damage

If there are indications of tire damage, reduce your speed immediately and have the rims and tires checked right away; otherwise, there is the increased risk of an accident.

Drive carefully to the nearest service center. Have the vehicle towed or transported there. Otherwise, tire damage can become life threatening for vehicle occupants and also other traffic. ◀



Repair of tire damage

For safety reasons, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you do not have damaged tires repaired; they should be replaced. Otherwise, damage can occur as a result. ◀

Changing wheels and tires

Mounting



Information on mounting tires

Have mounting and balancing performed only by a service center.

If work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. ◀

Wheel and tire combination

You can ask the service center about the right wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Incorrect wheel and tire combinations impair the function of a variety of systems such as ABS or DSC.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer.

Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.



Approved wheels and tires

You should only use wheels and tires that have been approved by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type; otherwise, e.g., despite having the same official size ratings, variations can lead to chassis contact and with it, the risk of severe accidents

The manufacturer of your vehicle cannot evaluate non-approved wheels and tires to determine if they are suited for use, and therefore cannot guarantee the operating safety of the vehicle. ◀

Recommended tire brands



For each tire size, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends certain tire brands. These can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

With proper use, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.



Retreaded tires

Possibly substantial variations in the design and age of the tire casing structures can limit service life and have a negative impact on road safety. ◀

Winter tires

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then a respective symbol is displayed in your field of vision. You can obtain this sign from the tire specialist or from your service center.



Maximum speed for winter tires

Do not exceed the maximum speed for the respective winter tires; otherwise, tire damage and accidents can occur. ◀

Rotating wheels between axles

The manufacturer of your vehicle advises against switching wheels between the front and rear axles. This can impair the handling characteristics.

Rotating the tires is not permissible on vehicles with different tire sizes on the front and rear axles, i.e. when using different types of tires.

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible.

Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels.

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Repairing a flat tire



Safety measures in case of a breakdown

Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.

Switch on the hazard warning system.

Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.

Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.

If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations. ◀

Mobility System

The concept

With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed quickly to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

Hints

- ▶ Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
- ▶ Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 in/4 mm or more.
- ▶ Contact the nearest service center if the tire cannot be made drivable.
- ▶ If possible, do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire.
- ▶ Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
- ▶ The use of a sealant can damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked at the next opportunity and have them replaced if needed.



Enclosed areas

Do not let the engine run in enclosed areas, since breathing in exhaust fumes may lead to loss of consciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas. ◀

Storage

The Mobility System is located behind the left side trim in the cargo area.

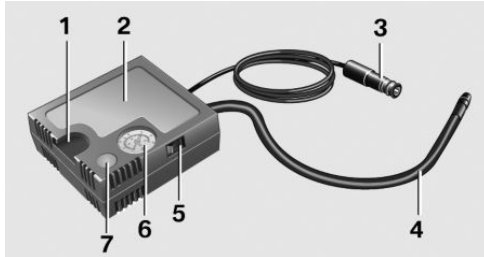
Sealing container



- Sealing container, arrow 1.
- Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor



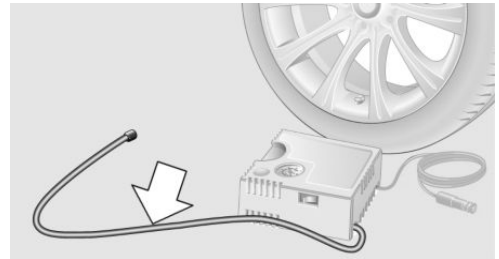
- 1 Holder for bottle
- 2 Compressor
- 3 Connector/cable for socket
- 4 Connection hose
- 5 On/off reel
- 6 Inflation pressure dial
- 7 Reduce inflation pressure

Filling the tire with sealant

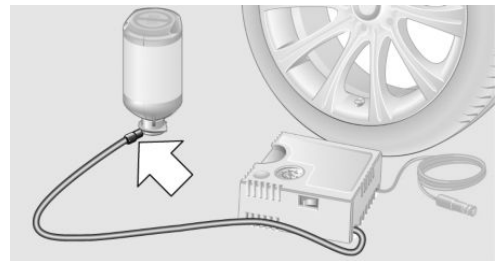
1. Shake the sealing container.



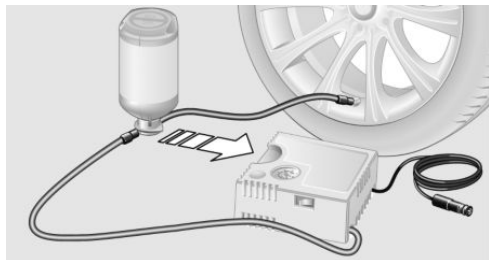
2. Pull the connection hose fully out of the compressor housing. Do not kink the hose.



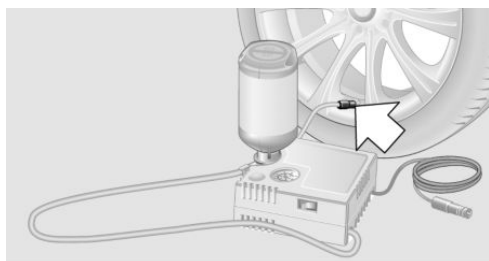
3. Screw the connection hose onto the connector of the sealant container.



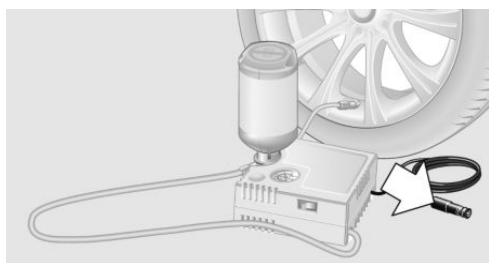
4. Insert the sealant container on the compressor housing in an upright position.



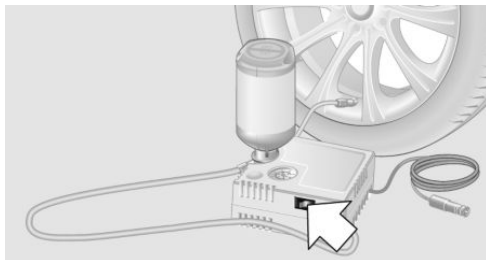
5. Screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the defective wheel.



6. With the compressor switched off, insert the plug into the power socket inside the vehicle.



7. With the ignition turned on or the engine running, reel on the compressor.



- ⚠** Switch off the compressor after 10 minutes

Do not allow the compressor to run longer than 10 minutes; otherwise, the device will overheat and may be damaged. ◀

Let the compressor run for approx. 3 to 8 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.5 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not reel off the compressor at this point.

If a tire inflation pressure of 2 bar is not reached:

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Unscrew the filling hose from the wheel.
3. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
4. Inflate the tire again using the compressor.

If a tire inflation pressure of 2 bar cannot be reached, contact your service center.

Stowing the Mobility System

1. Unscrew the filling hose of the sealant container from the wheel.
2. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the sealant container.
3. Connect the filling hose of the sealant container previously connected to the tire valve with the available connector on the sealant container.

This prevents leftover sealant from escaping from the container.

4. Wrap the empty sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.
5. Stow the Mobility System back in the vehicle.

Distributing the sealant

Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

To correct the tire inflation pressure

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.
3. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.
4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to 2.5 bar.
 - ▷ Increase pressure: with the ignition turned on or the engine running, reel on the compressor.
 - ▷ To reduce the pressure: press the button on the compressor.

Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Replace the defective tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System as soon as possible.

Snow chains

Fine-link snow chains

Only certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle, classified as road-safe and approved.

Information about the approved snow chains are available from the service center.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

- ▷ 285/40 R 20

Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Retighten as needed according to the chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not initialize the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, if needed briefly activate M Dynamic Mode.

Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

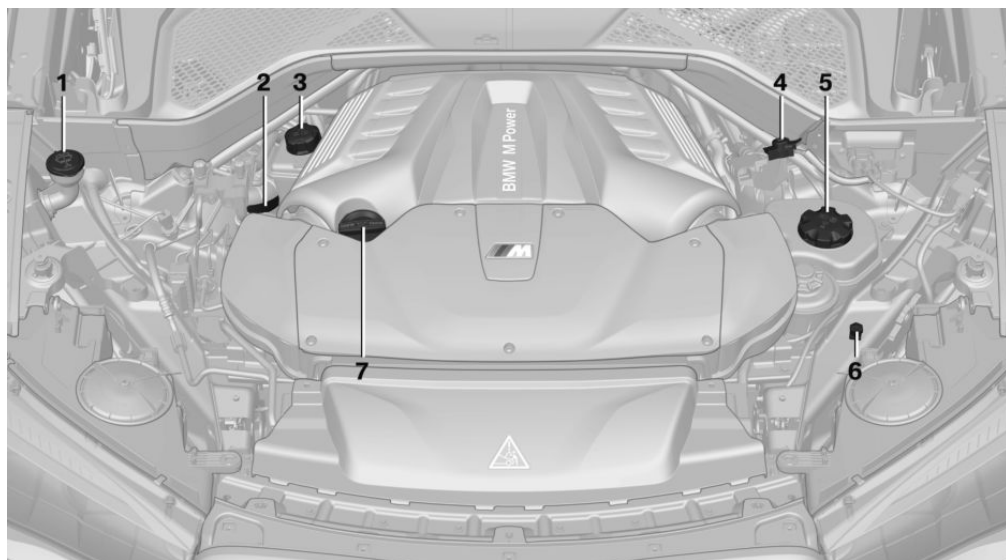
Engine compartment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Important features in the engine compartment



- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 Washer fluid reservoir | 5 Coolant reservoir for engine cooling |
| 2 Vehicle identification number | 6 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal |
| 3 Coolant reservoir for charge air cooling | 7 Oil filler neck |
| 4 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal | |

Hood

Opening the hood



Working in the engine compartment
Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the necessary professional technical training.

If you are unfamiliar with the statutory guidelines, have any work on the vehicle performed only by a service center.

If work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. ◀



Never reach into the engine compartment

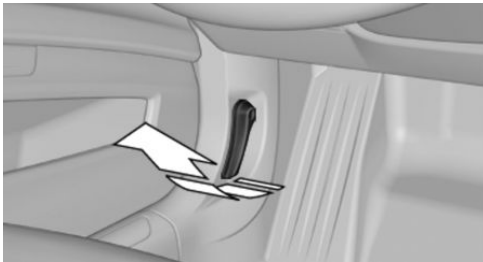
Never reach into spaces or gaps in the engine compartment; otherwise, there is a risk of injury, e.g., from rotating or hot parts. ◀



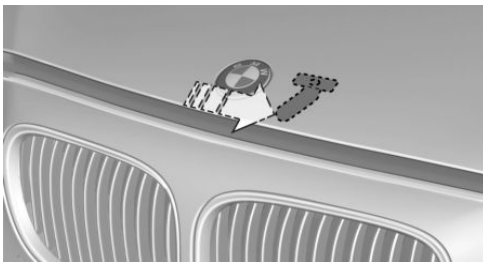
Danger of injury when the hood is open

There is a danger of injury from protruding parts when the hood is open. ◀

1. Pull the lever.



2. Press the release handle and open the hood.



3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.



Closing the hood



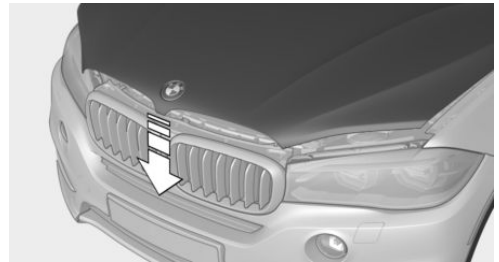
Hood open when driving

If you see any signs that the hood is not completely closed while driving, pull over immediately and close it securely. ◀



Danger of jamming

Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀



Let the hood drop from a height of approx. 16 in/40 cm and push down on it to lock it fully.

The hood must audibly engage on both sides.

Engine oil

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on the driving style and driving conditions.

The engine oil consumption can increase in case of, for example:

- ▶ Sporty driving.
- ▶ Break-in the engine.
- ▶ Idling of the engine.
- ▶ Usage of non-approved engine oil grades.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling.

When a dynamic driving style is used, such as when cornering fast, the system is unable to measure the engine oil level. With this driving style, measure the engine oil level using a detailed measurement, refer to page 207.

The vehicle is equipped with electronic oil measurement.

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- ▶ Status display
- ▶ Detailed measurement

Electronic oil measurement

Status display

The concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.

Requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of driving. During a shorter trip, the status of the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

With frequent short-distance trips, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Displaying the engine oil level

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Engine oil level"

Engine oil level display messages

Different messages appear on the display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

If the engine oil level is too low, within the next 125 miles/200 km Add engine oil, refer to page 207.



Engine oil level too low

Add engine oil immediately; otherwise, an insufficient amount of engine oil could result in engine damage.◀

Take care not to add too much engine oil.



Too much engine oil

Have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, surplus engine oil can lead to engine damage. ◀

Detailed measurement

The concept

In the detailed measurement the engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Requirements

- ▶ Vehicle is on level road.
- ▶ Selector lever in selector lever position N and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- ▶ Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement

In order to perform a detailed measurement of the engine oil level:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Measure engine oil level"
4. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Time: approx. 1 minute.

Adding engine oil

General information

Switch off the ignition and safely park the vehicle before engine oil is added.

Oil filler neck



Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Add 1 US quart/liter.



Adding engine oil

Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km; otherwise, this may cause engine damage. ◀



Do not add too much engine oil

When too much engine oil is added, immediately have the vehicle checked, otherwise, this may cause engine damage. ◀



Protect children

Keep oil, grease, etc., out of reach of children and observe the warnings on the containers to prevent health risks. ◀

Engine oil types to add

Hints



No oil additives

Oil additives may lead to engine damage. ◀



Viscosity grades for engine oils

When selecting an engine oil, ensure that the engine oil belongs to the viscosity grade SAE 0W-30, or malfunctions or engine damage may occur.

As an alternative, you can also use motor oils with a viscosity grade of SAE 5W-30. ◀

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Approved engine oil types

You can add engine oils with the following specifications:

Specification
BMW Longlife-01.
BMW Longlife-01 FE.

Additional information about the approved types of engine oils can be obtained from the service center.

Alternative engine oil types

If the approved engine oils are not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following specification can be added:

Specification
API SM or superior grade specification.

Engine oil change:

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you let the service center change the motor oil.

Coolant

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

General information

The vehicle has two coolant reservoirs that are located in the engine compartment.

To ensure the operational reliability of the vehicle, always check the coolant level of both coolant reservoirs.

Hints



Danger of burns from hot engine

Do not open the cooling system while the engine is hot; otherwise, escaping coolant may cause burns. ◀



Suitable additives

Only use suitable additives; otherwise, engine damage may occur. The additives are harmful to your health. ◀

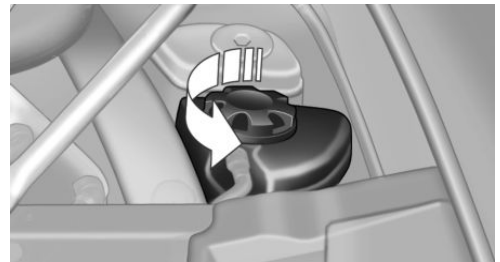
Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Information about the suitable additives are available from the service center.

Coolant level

Checking

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.

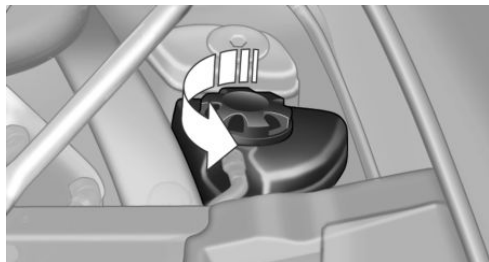


3. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
4. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.



Adding

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.



3. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
4. Close cap.
5. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Disposal



Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

BMW maintenance system

The maintenance system indicates required maintenance measures, and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

Condition Based Service CBS

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of your vehicle. Based on this, Condition Based Service recognizes the maintenance requirements.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

Details on the service requirements, refer to page 92, can be displayed on the Control Display.

Service data in the remote control

Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. Your service center will read out this data and suggest the right array of service procedures for your vehicle.

Therefore, hand your service specialist the remote control with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a service center update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if needed, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

Maintenance and repair should be performed by your service center. Make sure to have regular maintenance procedures recorded in the vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models, and in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries are proof of regular maintenance.

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis

Note

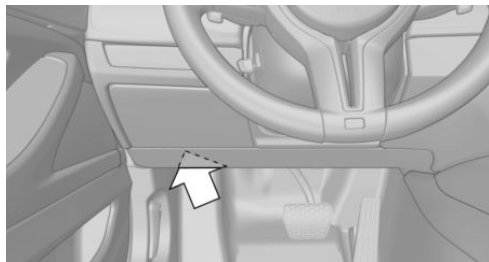


Socket for Onboard Diagnosis

The socket for onboard diagnostics may only be used by the service center or a workshop that operates in accordance with the specifications of the vehicle manufacturer with

correspondingly trained personnel and other authorized persons. Otherwise, use may result in operating problems for the vehicle.◀

Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

Emissions



- ▶ The warning lamp lights up:
Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- ▶ The warning lamp flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

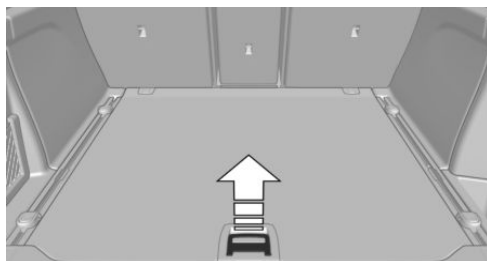
Replacing components

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Onboard vehicle tool kit

1. Fold up the cargo floor panel.



2. Remove the onboard vehicle tool kit.



Wiper blade replacement

Hints



Do not fold down the wipers without wiper blades

Do not fold down the wipers if wiper blades have not been installed; this may damage the windshield.◀

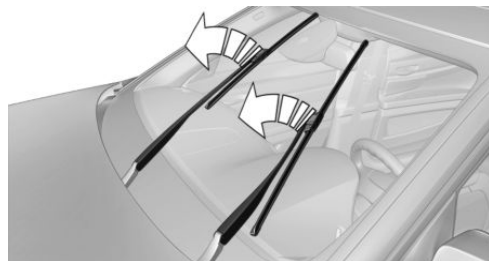


Folding down wipers before opening the hood

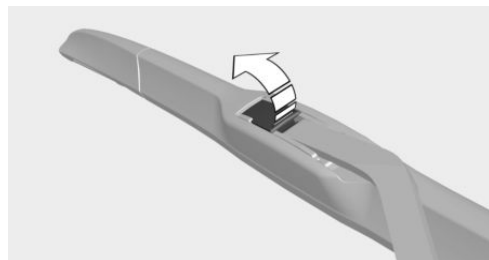
Before opening the hood, ensure that the wiper arms with the wiper blades are against the windshield to prevent damage.◀

Replacing the front wiper blades

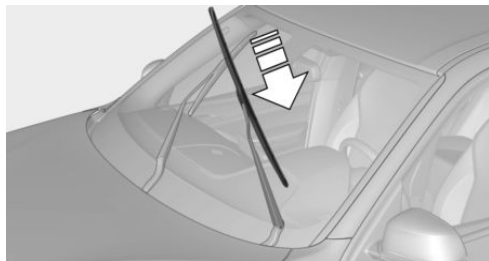
1. To change the wiper blades, fold up, refer to page 77, the wiper arms.
2. Lift the wiper all the way off of the windshield.



3. Fold open the holder.



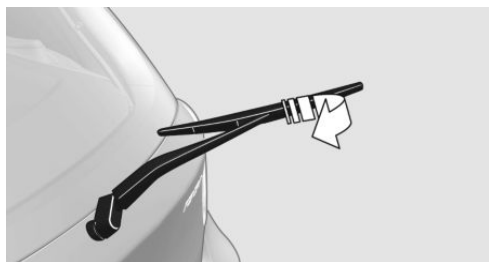
- Slide wiper blade out of the wiper arm.



- Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until you hear it snap into the holder.
- Fold down the wipers.

BMW X5 M: replacing the rear wiper blade

- Fold up the wiper arm.
- Turn the wiper blade all the way back.



- Continue turning the wiper blade all the way so that it pops out of the holder.
- Press the new wiper blade into the holder until you hear it snap into place.
- Fold the wipers in.

Lamp and bulb replacement

General information

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to the service center if you are unfamiliar those or if they have not been described here.

You can obtain a selection of replacement bulbs at the service center.

Hints

Lights and bulbs



Danger of burns

Only change bulbs when they are cool; otherwise, there is a danger of getting burned. ◀



Working on the lighting system

When working on the lighting system, you should always reel off the lights affected to prevent short circuits.

To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer. ◀



Do not touch the bulbs

Do not touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare hands, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life.

Use a clean tissue, cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base. ◀

Xenon headlights



Do not perform work/bulb replacement on xenon headlights

Have any work on the xenon lighting system, including bulb replacement, performed only by a service center. Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is a danger of fatal injuries if work is carried out improperly. ◀

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source.

These light-emitting diodes, which are related to conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.



Do not remove the covers

Do not remove the covers, and never stare into the unfiltered light for several hours; otherwise, irritation of the retina could result. ◀

Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the external lights in cool or humid weather. When driving with the light switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If the headlights do not dim despite driving with the light switched on, increasing humidity forms, e. g. water droplets in the light, have the service center check this.

Headlight setting

The headlight adjustments can be affected by changing lights and bulbs. Have the headlights' settings checked and corrected by service after a replacement.

Front lights, bulb replacement

Xenon headlights

Hints

Because of the long life of these bulbs, the likelihood of failure is very low. Switching the lights on and off frequently shortens their life.

If a bulb fails, reel on the front fog lights and continue the trip with great care. Comply with local regulations.

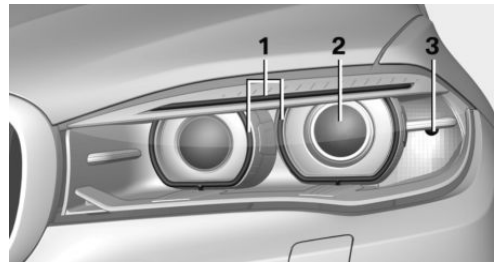


Do not perform work/bulb replacement on xenon headlights

Have any work on the xenon lighting system, including bulb replacement, performed only by a service center. Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is a danger of fatal injuries if work is carried out improperly. ◀

For checking and adjusting headlamp aim, please contact your BMW center.

At a glance



- 1 Parking lights / daytime running lights
- 2 Low beams/high beams/headlight flasher
- 3 Turn signal

Xenon headlights

Cornering lamp, low beams and high beams are designed with xenon technology.

The parking lights and daylight running lights are made using LED technology.

Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

LED headlights

With LED headlights, all front lights and side indicators are designed with LED technology.

If an LED fails, reel on the front fog lights and continue the trip with great care. Comply with local regulations.

Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

Turn signal

Note

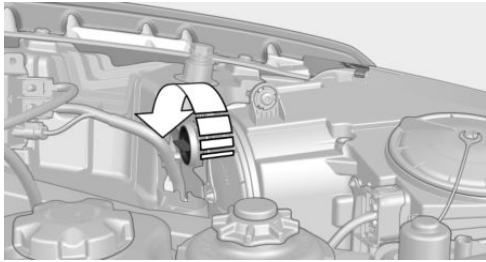
Follow general instructions, refer to page 214.

Replacement

21-watt bulb, PY 21W.

1. Opening the hood, refer to page 204
2. Unscrew the lid counterclockwise and remove it carefully.

The bulb is attached to the lid.



3. Turn the bulb clockwise to remove it.
4. Insert the new bulb and attach the cover in the reverse order.

Turn signal in exterior mirror

The turn signals in the exterior mirrors feature LED technology. Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

LED front fog lights

These front fog lights are made using LED technology. Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

Tail lights, bulb replacement

LED tail lights

These tail lights are made using LED technology. Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

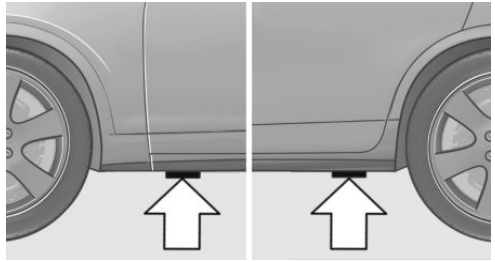
Changing wheels

Hints

When sealants are used, an immediate wheel change when there is a loss of tire inflation pressure in the event of a flat tire is unnecessary.

The tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from your service center.

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the positions shown.

Emergency wheel

Hints



Safety measures in case of a breakdown or a wheel change

- ▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground. Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Set the parking brake and engage lever in position P P.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning lamp at an appropriate distance. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.
- ▷ Perform wheel change only on a flat, solid and slip-resistant surface. On soft or slippery ground, e.g., snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle or vehicle jack can slip away to the side.
- ▷ Do not place wood blocks or similar items under the vehicle jack; otherwise, it cannot reach its carrying capacity because of the restricted height.
- ▷ If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine; otherwise, a fatal hazard exists. ◀

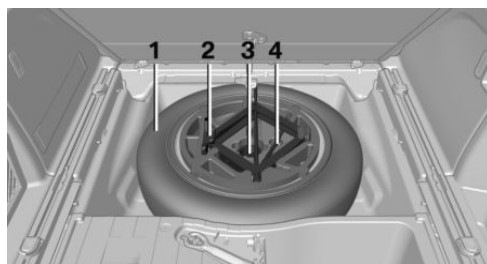


Use the vehicle jack only for changing wheels

Use the vehicle jack only for changing wheels. Do not attempt to use it to jack up a different type of vehicle or loads of any kind; otherwise, this could cause material damage and personal injury. ◀

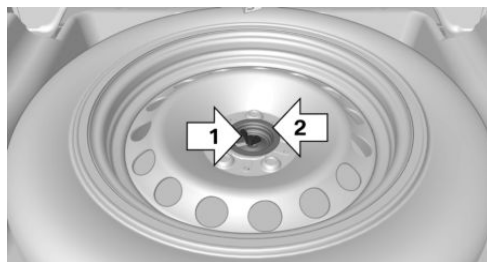
At a glance

The emergency wheel and the tools are located in the cargo area under the cargo floor panel.



- 1 Emergency wheel
- 2 Vehicle jack
- 3 Vehicle jack crank
- 4 Wheel lug wrench

Removing the emergency wheel



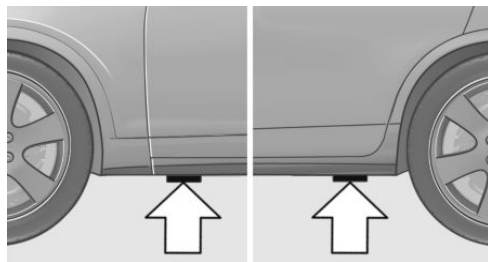
1. Remove tool holder.
2. Unscrew the wing nut 1.
3. Remove the washer 2 to the side.
4. Remove the emergency wheel.

Prepare wheel change

1. Follow the Safety instructions, refer to page 216.
2. Loosen the wheel lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking up the vehicle

1. Place the vehicle jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel such that the vehicle jack foot is vertically beneath the vehicle jacking point with the entire surface on the ground.



2. Insert the vehicle jack head in the rectangular recess of the jacking point for cranking it up.
3. Crank it up until the wheel in question lifts off of the ground.

Wheel mounting

1. Unscrew the wheel lug bolts and remove the wheel.
2. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two bolts.
If original BMW light alloy wheels are not mounted, any accompanying lug bolts also have to be used.
3. Screw in the remaining the lug bolts and tighten all bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
4. Lower the vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lb ft/140 Nm.



Check for secure seating of the lug bolts

For safety reasons, have the secure seating of the lug bolts checked with a calibrated torque wrench; otherwise, a safety hazard results from incorrectly tightened lug bolts. ◀

2. Stow the defective wheel in the cargo area.
The defective wheel cannot be stored under the cargo floor panel because of its size.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.
Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.
5. Replace the damaged tires as soon as possible.

Driving with emergency wheel



Watch the speed when driving with the emergency wheel

Drive conservatively and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h; otherwise, changed driving characteristics such as reduced lane stability while braking, extended braking distance and changed self-steering properties in the limit area. ◀



Mount one emergency wheel only

Only a single emergency wheel may be mounted. Reinstall wheels and tires of the original size as quickly as possible; otherwise, there is a safety risk. ◀

Vehicle battery

Maintenance

The battery is maintenance-free.

The added amount of acid is sufficient for the service life of the battery.

Further information about the battery can be obtained from your service center.

Battery replacement



Use approved vehicle batteries only

Only use vehicle batteries that have been approved for your vehicle by the manufacturer; otherwise, the vehicle could be damaged and systems or functions may not be fully available. ◀

After a battery replacement, have the battery registered on the vehicle by your service center to ensure that all comfort features are fully available and that any Check Control messages of these comfort features are no longer displayed.

Charging the battery

Note



Do not connect charging devices to the 12 volt socket in the vehicle

Do not connect battery chargers to the factory-installed 12 volt sockets in the vehicle as this may damage the vehicle battery due to an increased power consumption. ◀

General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

The battery may need to be charged in the following cases:

- ▷ When making frequent short-distance drives.
- ▷ If the vehicle is not used for prolonged periods, longer than a month.

Starting aid terminals

In the vehicle, only charge the battery via the starting aid terminals, refer to page 222, in the engine compartment with the engine off.

Power failure

After a temporary power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, e.g.:

- Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory: store the positions again.
- Time: update.
- Date: update.
- Glass sunroof: initialize the system, refer to page 50.

Disposing of old batteries



Have old batteries disposed of by your service center or bring them to a recycling center.

Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

Hints

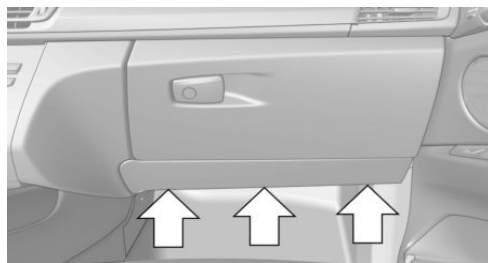


Replacing fuses

Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating; this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle. ◀

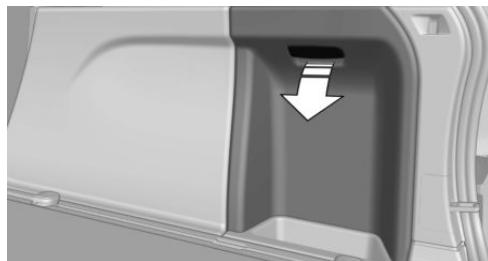
Plastic tweezers and information on the fuse types and locations are stored in the fuse box in the cargo area.

In the car's interior



Loosen fasteners, arrows, and open cover.

In the cargo area



Open the cover on the right side trim, arrow.

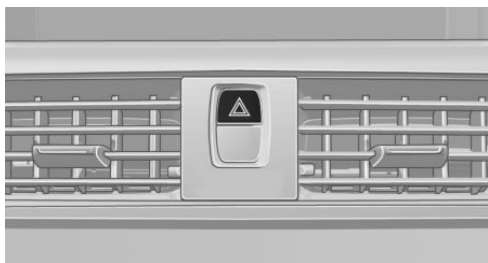
Information on the fuse types and locations is found on a separate sheet.

Breakdown assistance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Hazard warning flashers



The button is located in the center console.

Intelligent Emergency Request

The concept

In case of an emergency, an Emergency Request can be made through this system.

General information

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

Hints



Emergency Request not guaranteed
For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions. ◀

At a glance



SOS button in the roofliner

Requirements

- ▷ The SIM card integrated in the vehicle has been activated.
- ▷ The radio-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ The Assist system is functional.

Initiating an Emergency Request

1. Press the cover briefly to open it.
 2. Press the SOS button until the LED at the button lights up green.
- ▷ The LED lights up green: an Emergency Request was initiated.

If a cancel prompt appears on the display, the Emergency Request can be aborted.

If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

- ▷ The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

When the emergency request is received at the BMW Response Center, the BMW Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further

steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this, data are transmitted to the BMW Response Center which serve to determine the necessary rescue measures. E. g. the current position of the vehicle, if it can be established.

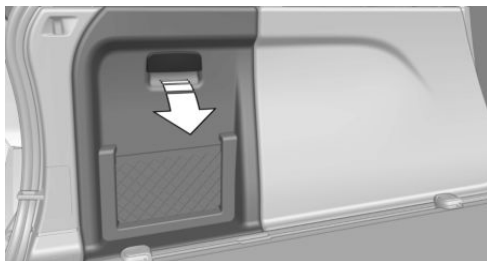
- ▶ If the LED is flashing green, but the BMW Response Center can no longer be heard via the speaker, you can nevertheless still be heard at the BMW Response Center.

Initiating an Emergency Request automatically

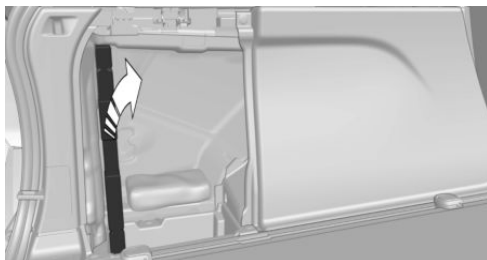
Under certain conditions, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after a severe accident. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Warning triangle

1. Open the cover on the left side trim.



2. Lift the warning triangle slightly and remove in the direction of the interior.



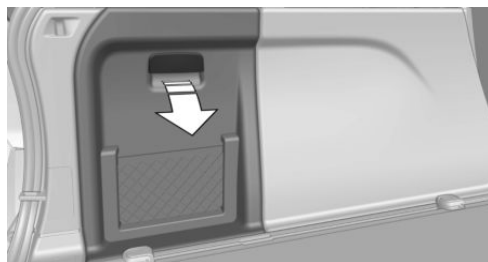
First aid kit

Note

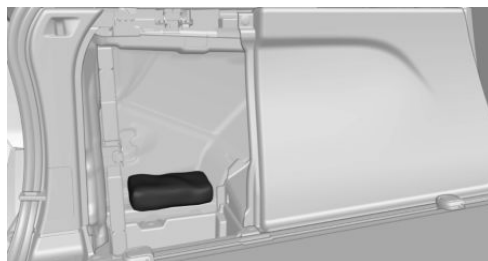
Some of the articles have a limited service life. Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Storage

1. Open the cover on the left side trim.



2. Remove the first aid kit.



Roadside Assistance

Service availability

Roadside Assistance can be reached around the clock in many countries. You can obtain assistance there in the event of a vehicle breakdown.

Roadside Assistance

The Roadside Assistance phone number can be viewed on the iDrive or a connection to

Roadside Assistance can be established directly.

Jump-starting

Hints

If the battery is discharged, an engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

To prevent personal injury or damage to both vehicles, adhere strictly to the following procedure.



Do not touch live parts

To avoid the risk of potentially fatal injury, always avoid all contact with electrical components while the engine is running.◀

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.



Bodywork contact between vehicles

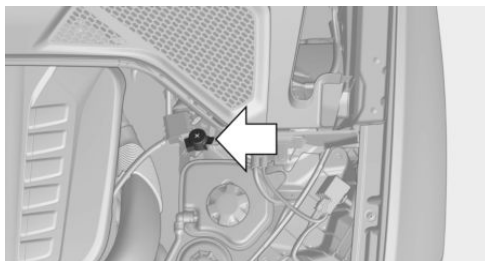
Make sure that there is no contact between the bodywork of the two vehicles; otherwise, there is a danger of short circuits.◀

Starting aid terminals

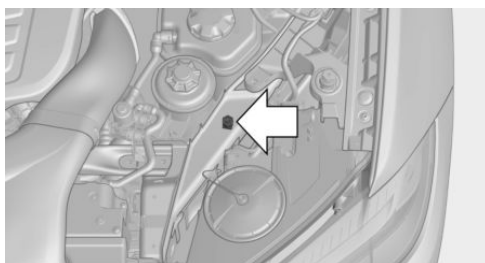


Connecting order

Connect the jumper cables in the correct order to prevent risk of injury from arcing.◀



The so-called starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery's positive terminal.



The body ground or a special nut acts as the battery negative terminal.

Connecting the cables

1. Pull off the lid of the BMW starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the

corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge if needed.

Tow-starting and towing

Note

 Tow-starting and towing
For towing the vehicle turn, switch off the Intelligent Safety systems; otherwise malfunctions of the individual braking systems might lead to accidents. ◀

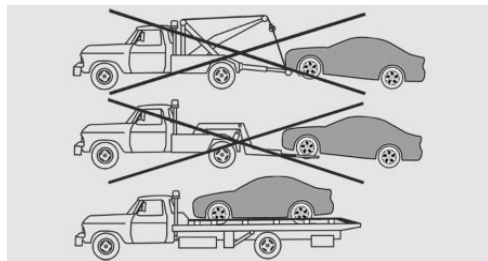
Transporting your vehicle

Note

Your vehicle is not permitted to be towed. Therefore, contact a service center in the event of a breakdown.

 Do not have the vehicle towed
Have your vehicle transported on a loading platform only; otherwise, damage may occur. ◀

Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.



Do not lift the vehicle

Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result. ◀

Towing other vehicles

Hints



Light towing vehicle

The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. ◀



Attaching the tow bar/tow rope correctly

Attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting; connecting it to other vehicle parts may cause damage. ◀

- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.
- ▷ If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

- ▷ Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

Tow rope

When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on the vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps.

Tow fitting

The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW.



The tow fitting is located in the onboard vehicle tool kit under the cargo floor panel.



Tow fitting, information on use

- ▷ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- ▷ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- ▷ Use tow fitting located in the front only for positioning the vehicle.

- ▷ Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g., do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

Otherwise, damage to the tow fitting and the vehicle can occur. ◀

Screw thread for tow fitting



Press on the mark of the cover to push it out.

Tow-starting

Note:

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Tow-starting the engine is not possible due to the Steptronic Sport transmission.

Have the cause of the starting problems fixed.

Care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Car washes

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Hints



Steam jets or high-pressure washers

When using steam jets or high-pressure washers, hold them a sufficient distance away and use a maximum temperature of 140 °F/60 °C.

If the vehicle has a glass sunroof, ensure that a distance of at least 31.5 inches/80 cm is maintained. Holding them too close or using excessively high pressures or temperatures can cause damage or preliminary damage that may then lead to long-term damage.

Follow the user's manual for the high-pressure washer. ◀



Cleaning sensors/cameras with high-pressure washers

When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the exterior sensors and cameras, e.g., Park Distance Control, for extended periods of

time and only from a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm. ◀

Automatic car washes

Hints

Note the following:

- ▷ Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- ▷ Make sure that the wheels and tires are not damaged by the transport mechanisms.
- ▷ Fold in the exterior mirrors; otherwise, they may be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle.
- ▷ Deactivate the rain sensor, refer to page 76, to avoid unintentional wiper activation.
- ▷ In some cases, an unintentional alarm can be triggered by the interior motion sensor of the alarm system. Follow the instructions on avoiding an unintentional alarm, refer to page 47.



Guide rails in car washes

Avoid car washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm; otherwise, the vehicle body could be damaged. ◀

Different types of tires



Observing vehicle width

Before entering washing systems, make sure that the vehicle width is not too great for the car wash; otherwise, there could be damage to the vehicle and car wash. ◀

Before driving into a car wash

In order to ensure that the vehicle can roll in a car wash, take the following steps:

1. Drive into the car wash.
2. Engage selector lever position N.
3. Deactivating Automatic Hold, refer to page 73.
4. Release the parking brake.
5. Switch the engine off.

In this way, the ignition remains switched on, and a Check-Control message is displayed.



Do not turn off the ignition in the car wash

Do not turn off the ignition in the car wash; otherwise, the transmission position P is engaged and damages can result. ◀

The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

To start the engine:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button without stepping on the brake turns the ignition off.

Transmission position

Transmission position P is engaged automatically:

- ▶ When the ignition is switched off.
- ▶ After approx. 15 minutes.

Headlights

- ▶ Do not rub dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleansers.
- ▶ Soak areas that have been dirtied e. g., from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

- ▶ Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced and corrosion of the brake discs can occur.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Car care products

BMW recommends using care and cleaning products from BMW, since these have been tested and approved.



Car care and cleaning products

Follow the instructions on the container.

When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows.

Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles.

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. ◀

Vehicle paint

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your car care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather often, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Suitable care products are available from the service center.

Upholstery material care

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, e.g., with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.



Damage from Velcro® fasteners

Open Velcro® fasteners on pants or other articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed. ◀

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disk.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, particularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

Rubber components

Aside from water, treat only with rubber cleansers.

When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing car care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic components

These include:

- ▶ Imitation leather surfaces.
- ▶ Roofliner.
- ▶ Lamp lenses.
- ▶ Instrument cluster cover.
- ▶ Matt black spray-coated components.
- ▶ Painted parts in the interior.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen cloth lightly with water.

Do not soak the roofliner.



No cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents

Do not use cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such; this could lead to surface damage. ◀

Safety belts

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.



Chemical cleaning

Do not clean chemically; this can destroy the webbing. ◀

Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles.

Do not allow the reels to retract the safety belts until they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats



No objects in the area around the pedals

Keep floor mats, carpets, and any other objects out of the pedal area; otherwise, the function of the pedals could be impeded while driving and create the risk of an accident.

Do not place additional floor mats over existing mats or other objects.

Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be properly attached to floor.

Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed for cleaning, e.g. ◀

Floor mats can be removed from the car's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

Sensors/cameras

To clean sensors and cameras, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass cleaner.

Displays/monitors



Cleaning displays and screens

Do not use any chemical or household cleaning agents; otherwise, surfaces can be affected. ◀



Keeping out moisture

Keep all fluids and moisture away from the unit; otherwise, electrical components can be damaged. ◀



Avoid pressure

Avoid pressing too hard when cleaning and do not use abrasive materials; otherwise, damage can result. ◀

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

Long-term

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Additional information is available from the service center.



Reference

This chapter contains the technical data and an index that will quickly take you to the information you need.

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Note

The technical data and specifications in this Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for example, due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be

found in the approval documents, on information signs on the vehicle or can be obtained from the service center.

The information in the vehicle documents always has priority.

Dimensions

Note

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, for example, a roof antenna,

roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for example, due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

BMW X5 M

Width with mirrors	inches/mm	85.9/2,184
Width without mirrors	inches/mm	78.1/1,985
Height	inches/mm	67.6/1,717
Length	inches/mm	192.7/4,894
Wheelbase	inches/mm	115.5/2,933
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	42.0/12.8

BMW X6 M

Width with mirrors	inches/mm	85.4/2,170
Width without mirrors	inches/mm	78.3/1,989

BMW X6 M

Height	inches/mm	66.5/1,689
Length	inches/mm	193.8/4,923
Wheelbase	inches/mm	115.5/2,933
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	42.0/12.8

Weights**BMW X5 M**

Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	6,550/2,971
Load	lbs/kg	1,170/531
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	3,130/1,420
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,595/1,631
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	220/100
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	35.8-76.7
Canada: cargo area capacity	Liters	650-1,870

BMW X6 M

Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	6,505/2,951
Load	lbs/kg	1,170/531
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	3,130/1,420
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,550/1,610
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	220/100
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	26.6-59.7
Canada: cargo area capacity	Liters	580-1,525

Capacities

BMW X5 M	US gal/liters	Notes
Fuel tank, approx.	22.4/85	Fuel quality, refer to page 192

BMW X6 M	US gal/liters	Notes
Fuel tank, approx.	22.4/85	Fuel quality, refer to page 192

Everything from A to Z

Index

A

- ABS, Antilock Brake System [129](#)
Acceleration Assistant, refer to Launch Control [82](#)
Activated-charcoal filter [153](#)
Active Blind Spot Detection [124](#)
Active Protection [127](#)
Active seat ventilation, front [54](#)
Adaptive brake lights, refer to Brake force display [126](#)
Adaptive Light Control [102](#)
Additives, oil [207](#)
Adjustments, seats/head restraints [52](#)
After washing vehicle [226](#)
Airbags [106](#)
Airbags, indicator/warning light [107](#)
Air circulation, refer to Recirculated-air mode [152](#)
Air, dehumidifying, refer to Cooling function [152](#)
Air distribution, manual [151](#)
Air flow, automatic climate control [151](#)
Air outlets, see ventilation [153](#)
Air pressure, tires [194](#)
Alarm system [46](#)
Alarm, unintentional [47](#)
All around the center console [16](#)
All around the roofliner [17](#)
All around the steering wheel [14](#)
All-season tires, refer to Winter tires [199](#)
All-wheel-drive [132](#)
Alternating-code hand-held transmitter [158](#)
Alternative oil types [208](#)
Animal detection, see Night Vision [119](#)
Antifreeze, washer fluid [77](#)
Antilock Brake System, ABS [129](#)
Anti-slip control, refer to DSC [130](#)
Approved axle load [233](#)
Approved engine oils [208](#)
Arrival time [96](#)
Ashtray [159](#)
Ashtray, front [159](#)
Ashtray, rear [160](#)
Assistance, Roadside Assistance [221](#)
Assistance when driving off [129](#)
Assist system, refer to Intelligent Safety [113](#)
Attentiveness assistant [127](#)
AUTO H button [73](#)
AUTO H button, refer to Automatic Hold [73](#)
AUTO intensity [151](#)
Automatic car wash [225](#)
Automatic climate control [150](#)
Automatic Curb Monitor [60](#)
Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags [108](#)
Automatic headlight control [102](#)
Automatic Hold [73](#)
Automatic locking [46](#)
Automatic recirculated-air control [152](#)
Automatic Soft Closing, doors [40](#)
Automatic tailgate [40](#)
Automatic transmission [78](#)
AUTO program, automatic climate control [151](#)
AUTO program, intensity [151](#)
Auto Start/Stop function [70](#)
Average fuel consumption [96](#)
Average speed [96](#)
Axle loads, weights [233](#)

B

- Backrest curvature, refer to Lumbar support [53](#)
Backrest, seats [52](#)
Backrest, width [54](#)
Bad road trips [179](#)
Band-aids, refer to First aid kit [221](#)
Bar for tow-starting/towing [223](#)
Battery replacement, vehicle battery [218](#)
Battery replacement, vehicle remote control [34](#)
Battery, vehicle [218](#)
Belts, safety belts [55](#)
Beverage holder, cupholder [171](#)
Blinds, sun protection [49](#)
BMW Assist, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
BMW maintenance system [211](#)
BMW M technology [176](#)
Bottle holder, refer to Cupholder [171](#)

Brake assistant [129](#)
Brake discs, break-in [177](#)
Brake force display [126](#)
Brake lights, adaptive [126](#)
Brake lights, brake force display [126](#)
Brake pads, break-in [177](#)
Braking, hints [178](#)
Breakdown assistance [220](#), [221](#)
Break-in [177](#)
Brightness of Control Display [98](#)
Bulb replacement [214](#)
Bulb replacement, front [215](#)
Bulb replacement, rear [216](#)
Bulbs and lights [214](#)
Button, Start/Stop [68](#)
Bypassing, refer to Jump-starting [222](#)

C

California Proposition 65 Warning [7](#)
Calling up mirror adjustment [46](#)
Calling up seat adjustment [46](#)
Calling up steering wheel adjustment [46](#)
Camera, care [228](#)
Camera, rearview camera [140](#)
Camera, Side View [145](#)
Camera, Top View [143](#)
Can holder, refer to Cupholder [171](#)
Car battery [218](#)
Car care products [226](#)
Care, displays [228](#)
Care, vehicle [226](#)
Cargo [181](#)
Cargo area [164](#), [166](#)
Cargo area, enlarging [164](#), [166](#)
Cargo area partition net [165](#)
Cargo area, storage compartments [172](#)
Cargo cover [164](#), [166](#)
Cargo, securing [182](#)
Cargo straps, securing cargo [182](#)
Car key, refer to Remote control [34](#)
Carpet, care [228](#)
Car wash [225](#)
Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system [178](#)
CBS Condition Based Service [211](#)
CD/Multimedia, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Center armrest [169](#)
Center console [16](#)
Central locking system [39](#)
Central screen, refer to Control Display [18](#)
Changes, technical, refer to Safety [7](#)
Changing parts [213](#)
Changing wheels [216](#)
Changing wheels/tires [199](#)
Chassis number, see vehicle identification number [9](#)
Check Control [85](#)
Checking the engine oil level electronically [206](#)
Checking the oil level electronically [206](#)
Children, seating position [63](#)
Children, transporting safely [63](#)
Child restraint fixing system [63](#)
Child restraint fixing system LATCH [65](#)
Child restraint fixing systems, mounting [63](#)
Child safety locks [67](#)
Child seat, mounting [63](#)
Child seats [63](#)
Chrome parts, care [227](#)
Cigarette lighter [160](#)
Cleaning displays [228](#)
Climate control [150](#)
Clock [89](#)
Closing/opening via door lock [39](#)
Closing/opening with remote control [37](#)
Closing the tailgate with no-touch activation [44](#)
Clothes hooks [172](#)
Cockpit [14](#)
Combination reel, refer to Turn signals [75](#)
Combination reel, refer to Wiper system [75](#)
Comfort Access [43](#)
Compact wheel [216](#)
Compartments in the doors [169](#)
Compass [96](#)
Compound brake [176](#)
Compressor [200](#)
Computer [95](#)
Condensation on windows [151](#)
Condensation under the vehicle [179](#)
Condition Based Service CBS [211](#)
Confirmation signal [45](#)
ConnectedDrive, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
ConnectedDrive Services
Connecting electrical devices [161](#)
Control Display [18](#)
Control Display, settings [97](#)
Controller [18](#), [19](#)
Control systems, driving stability [129](#)

Convenient opening with the remote control [37](#)
Coolant [209](#)
Coolant temperature [89](#)
Cooler [162](#)
Cooling function [152](#)
Cooling, maximum [152](#)
Cooling system [209](#)
Corrosion on brake discs [179](#)
Cosmetic mirror [159](#)
Cruise control [135](#)
Cruising range [90](#)
Cupholder [171](#)
Current fuel consumption [91](#)

D

Damage, tires [198](#)
Damping control [133](#)
Data, technical [232](#)
Date [90](#)
Daytime running lights [102](#)
Defrosting, refer to Windows, defrosting [151](#)
Dehumidifying, air [152](#)
Deleting personal data [24](#)
Deletion of personal data [24](#)
Departure time, parked-car ventilation [156](#)
Destination distance [96](#)
Digital clock [89](#)
Digital speed [90](#)
Digital tachometer [90](#)
Dimensions [232](#)
Dimmable exterior mirrors [60](#)
Dimmable interior rearview mirror [60](#)
Direction indicator, refer to Turn signals [75](#)
Display, electronic, instrument cluster [84](#)
Display in windshield [99](#)
Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting [104](#)
Displays, cleaning [228](#)
Disposal, coolant [210](#)
Disposal, vehicle battery [219](#)
Distance control, refer to PDC [137](#)
Distance to destination [96](#)
Divided screen view, split screen [23](#)
Door lock [39](#)
Door lock, refer to Remote control [34](#)
Doors, Automatic Soft Closing [40](#)
Downhill control [132](#)
Drivelogic [80](#)
Drive mode [79](#)
Drive-off assistant [129](#)
Drive-off assistant, refer to DSC [130](#)
Driving Dynamics Control [82](#)
Driving instructions, break-in [177](#)
Driving notes, general [177](#)
Driving on bad roads [179](#)
Driving on racetracks [176](#)
Driving program, refer to Drivelogic [80](#)
Driving stability control systems [129](#)
Driving tips [177](#)
DSC Dynamic Stability Control [130](#)
Dynamic driving systems [92](#)
Dynamic driving, system states [92](#)
Dynamic Performance Control [129](#)
Dynamic Stability Control DSC [130](#)

E

Electronic oil measurement [206](#)
Electronic Stability Program ESP, refer to DSC [130](#)
Emergency detection, remote control [35](#)
Emergency release, fuel filler flap [190](#)
Emergency release, parking brake [74](#)
Emergency Request [220](#)
Emergency service, refer to Roadside Assistance [221](#)
Emergency start function, engine start [35](#)
Emergency unlocking, transmission lock [81](#)
Emergency wheel [216](#)
Energy Control [91](#)
Energy recovery [91](#)
Engine, automatic reel-off [70](#)
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function [70](#)
Engine compartment [204](#)
Engine compartment, working in [204](#)
Engine coolant [209](#)
Engine oil [206](#)
Engine oil, adding [207](#)
Engine oil additives [207](#)
Engine oil change [208](#)
Engine oil filler neck [207](#)
Engine oil temperature [89](#)
Engine oil types, alternative [208](#)
Engine oil types, approved [208](#)
Engine start during malfunction [35](#)
Engine start, jump-starting [222](#)
Engine start, refer to Starting the engine [69](#)
Engine stop [69](#)
Engine temperature [89](#)
Entering a car wash [225](#)

Equipment, interior [157](#)
Error displays, see Check Control [85](#)
ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to DSC [130](#)
Exchanging wheels/tires [199](#)
Exhaust system [178](#)
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature [60](#)
Exterior mirrors [59](#)
External start [222](#)
External temperature display [89](#)
External temperature warning [89](#)
Eyes for securing cargo [182](#)

F

Failure message, see Check Control [85](#)
False alarm, refer to Unintentional alarm [47](#)
Fan, refer to Air flow [151](#)
Filler neck for engine oil [207](#)
Fine wood, care [227](#)
First aid kit [221](#)
Fitting for towing, see tow fitting [224](#)
Flat tire, changing wheels [216](#)
Flat Tire Monitor FTM [112](#)
Flat tire, repairing [200](#)
Flat tire, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM [109](#)
Flat tire, warning lamp [110](#), [112](#)
Flooding [178](#)
Floor carpet, care [228](#)
Floor mats, care [228](#)
Fold-out position, wiper [77](#)
Foot brake [178](#)
Front airbags [106](#)
Front center armrest [169](#)
Front cupholder [171](#)

Front-end collision warning with City Braking function [114](#)
Front fog lights [104](#)
Front fog lights, bulb replacement [216](#)
Front lights [215](#)
front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation [108](#)
Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator lamp [108](#)
Front seats [52](#)
FTM Flat Tire Monitor [112](#)
Fuel [192](#)
Fuel consumption, current [91](#)
Fuel consumption, refer to Average fuel consumption [96](#)
Fuel filler flap [190](#)
Fuel gauge [89](#)
Fuel lid [190](#)
Fuel quality [192](#)
Fuel recommendation [192](#)
Fuel, tank capacity [234](#)
Fuse [219](#)

G

Garage door opener, refer to Universal Integrated Remote Control [157](#)
Gasoline [192](#)
Gear change [80](#)
Gear shift indicator [93](#)
General driving notes [177](#)
Glare shield [159](#)
Glasses compartment [170](#)
Glass sunroof, powered [49](#)
Glass sunroof, refer to Panoramic glass sunroof [49](#)
Glove compartment [168](#)
Gross vehicle weight, approved [233](#)
Ground clearance [179](#)

H

Handbrake, refer to Parking brake [72](#)
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code [158](#)
Hazard warning flashers [220](#)
HDC Hill Descent Control [132](#)
Head airbags [106](#)
Headlight control, automatic [102](#)
Headlight courtesy delay feature [101](#)
Headlight flasher [75](#)
Headlight glass [215](#)
Headlights [215](#)
Headlights, care [226](#)
Headlight washer system [75](#)
Head restraints [52](#)
Head restraints, front [56](#)
Head restraints, rear [57](#)
Head-up Display [99](#)
Head-up Display, care [228](#)
Head-up display, M view [99](#)
Head-up display, standard view [99](#)
Heavy cargo, stowing [182](#)
High-beam Assistant [103](#)
High beams [75](#)
High beams/low beams, refer to High-beam Assistant [103](#)
Hill Descent Control HDC [132](#)
Hills [179](#)
Hill start assistant, refer to Drive-off assistant [129](#)
Hints [6](#)
Holder for beverages [171](#)
Hood [204](#)
Horn [14](#)
Hot exhaust system [178](#)
HUD Head-up Display [99](#)
Hydroplaning [178](#)

I

Ice warning, see External temperature warning [89](#)
Icy roads, see External temperature warning [89](#)
Identification marks, tires [196](#)
Identification number, see vehicle identification number [9](#)
iDrive [18](#)
Ignition key, refer to Remote control [34](#)
Ignition off [68](#)
Ignition on [68](#)
Indication of a flat tire [110](#), [112](#)
Indicator and alarm lamps, see Check Control [85](#)
Indicator lamp, see Check Control [85](#)
Individual air distribution [151](#)
Individual settings, refer to M Drive [61](#)
Individual settings, refer to Personal Profile [35](#)
Inflation pressure, tires [194](#)
Inflation pressure warning FTM, tires [112](#)
Info display, refer to Computer [95](#)
Initialize, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM [110](#)
Initializing, Flat Tire Monitor FTM [112](#)
Instrument cluster [84](#)
Instrument cluster, electronic displays [84](#)
Instrument lighting [104](#)
Integrated key [34](#)
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle [29](#)
Intelligent Emergency Request [220](#)
Intelligent Safety [113](#)

Intensity, AUTO program [151](#)
Interior equipment [157](#)
Interior lights [104](#)
Interior lights via remote control [37](#)
Interior motion sensor [47](#)
Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature [60](#)
Interval display, service requirements [92](#)

J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack [216](#)
Jump-starting [222](#)

K

Key/remote control [34](#)
Keyless Go, refer to Comfort Access [43](#)
Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile [35](#)
Knee airbag [106](#)

L

Lamp replacement [214](#)
Lamp replacement, front [215](#)
Lamp replacement, rear [216](#)
Lane departure warning [123](#)
Lane margin, warning [123](#)
Language on Control Display [98](#)
Lashing eyes, securing cargo [182](#)
LATCH child restraint system [65](#)
Launch Control [82](#)
Leather, care [227](#)
LED front fog lights, bulb replacement [216](#)
LED headlights, bulb replacement [215](#)

LEDs, light-emitting diodes [214](#)
Letters and numbers, entering [25](#)
Light alloy wheels, care [227](#)
Light control [102](#)
Light-emitting diodes, LEDs [214](#)
Lighting [101](#)
Lighting via remote control [37](#)
Light reel [101](#)
Lights [101](#)
Lights and bulbs [214](#)
Load [182](#)
Loading [181](#)
Lock, door [39](#)
Locking/unlocking via door lock [39](#)
Locking/unlocking with remote control [37](#)
Locking, automatic [46](#)
Locking, settings [45](#)
Lock, power window [49](#)
Locks, doors, and windows [67](#)
Low beams [101](#)
Low beams, automatic, refer to High-beam Assistant [103](#)
Lower back support [53](#)
Lower tailgate [42](#)
Low Speed Assistant [79](#)
Luggage rack, see Roof-mounted luggage rack [183](#)
Lumbar support [53](#)

M

Maintenance [211](#)
Maintenance requirements [211](#)
Maintenance, service requirements [92](#)
Maintenance system, BMW [211](#)
Make-up mirror [159](#)

Malfunction displays, see
Check Control [85](#)
Malfunction, self-leveling sus-
pension [134](#)
Manual air distribution [151](#)
Manual air flow [151](#)
Manual brake, refer to Parking
brake [72](#)
Manual operation, door
lock [39](#)
Manual operation, exterior
mirrors [59](#)
Manual operation, fuel filler
flap [190](#)
Manual operation, Park Dis-
tance Control PDC [138](#)
Manual operation, parking
brake [74](#)
Manual operation, rearview
camera [140](#)
Manual operation, Top
View [143](#)
Marking on approved
tires [199](#)
Master key, refer to Remote
control [34](#)
Maximum cooling [152](#)
Maximum speed, display [93](#)
Maximum speed, winter
tires [200](#)
M Compound brake [176](#)
MDM, M Dynamic Mode [130](#)
M Drive [61](#)
M Driving Dynamics Con-
trol [82](#)
M Dynamic Mode MDM [130](#)
Measure, units of [98](#)
Medical kit [221](#)
Memory for seat, mirrors,
steering wheel [58](#)
Menu in instrument clus-
ter [94](#)
Menus, operating, iDrive [18](#)
Menus, refer to iDrive operat-
ing concept [20](#)

Messages, see Check Con-
trol [85](#)
Microfilter [153](#)
Minimum tread, tires [198](#)
Mirror [59](#)
Mirror memory [58](#)
Mobile communication devi-
ces in the vehicle [178](#)
Mobility System [200](#)
Modifications, technical, refer
to Safety [7](#)
Moisture in headlight [215](#)
Monitor, refer to Control Dis-
play [18](#)
Mounting of child restraint
systems [63](#)
Moving sun visor [159](#)
M technology [176](#)
Multifunction steering wheel,
buttons [14](#)
M view, head-up display [99](#)

N

Navigation, see user's manual
for Navigation, Entertain-
ment and Communication
Neck restraints, front, refer to
Head restraints [56](#)
Neck restraints, rear, refer to
Head restraints [57](#)
Neutral cleaner, see wheel
cleaner [227](#)
New wheels and tires [199](#)
Night Vision [119](#)
Night Vision device, see Night
Vision [119](#)
Nylon rope for tow-starting/
towing [223](#)

O

OBD Onboard Diagnosis [211](#)
OBD, see OBD Onboard Di-
agnosis [211](#)

Object detection, see Night
Vision [119](#)
Obstacle marking, rearview
camera [141](#)
Octane rating, refer to Rec-
ommended fuel grade [192](#)
Odometer [89](#)
Office, see user's manual for
Navigation, Entertainment
and Communication
Offroad trips [179](#)
Oil [206](#)
Oil, adding [207](#)
Oil additives [207](#)
Oil change [208](#)
Oil change interval, service
requirements [92](#)
Oil filler neck [207](#)
Oil types, alternative [208](#)
Oil types, approved [208](#)
Old batteries, disposal [219](#)
Onboard monitor, refer to
Control Display [18](#)
Onboard vehicle tool kit [213](#)
Opening/closing via door
lock [39](#)
Opening and closing [34](#)
Opening and closing, without
remote control [39](#)
Opening and closing, with re-
mote control [37](#)
Opening the tailgate with no-
touch activation [44](#)
Operating concept, iDrive [18](#)
Optional equipment, standard
equipment [6](#)
Outside air, refer to Auto-
matic recirculated-air con-
trol [152](#)
Overheating of engine, refer
to Coolant temperature [89](#)

P

Paint, vehicle [226](#)
Panoramic glass sunroof [49](#)

Parallel parking assistant [146](#)
Park Distance Control
PDC [137](#)
Parked-car ventilation [155](#)
Parked vehicle, condensation [179](#)
Parking aid, refer to PDC [137](#)
Parking assistant [146](#)
Parking brake [72](#)
Parking lights [101](#)
Parking with Automatic Hold [73](#)
Passenger side mirror, tilting downward [60](#)
Pathway lines, rearview camera [141](#)
PDC Park Distance Control [137](#)
Pedestrian detection, see Night Vision [119](#)
Pedestrian warning with city braking function [117](#)
Personal Profile [35](#)
Personal Profile, exporting profiles [36](#)
Pinch protection system, glass sunroof [50](#)
Pinch protection system, windows [48](#)
Plastic, care [227](#)
Power failure [219](#)
Power sunroof, glass [49](#)
Power windows [48](#)
Pressure, tire air pressure [194](#)
Pressure warning FTM, tires [112](#)
Preventing Auto Start Stop [71](#)
Profile, refer to Personal Profile [35](#)
Programmable memory buttons, iDrive [24](#)
Protective function, glass sunroof [50](#)

Protective function, windows [48](#)
Push-and-turn reel, refer to Controller [18](#), [19](#)

R

Radiator fluid [209](#)
Radio-operated key, refer to Remote control [34](#)
Radio ready state [68](#)
Radio, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Rain sensor [76](#)
Rear automatic climate control [154](#)
Rear center armrest [170](#)
Rear cooler [162](#)
Rear drink holder [171](#)
Rear lights [216](#)
Rear seats [55](#)
Rearview camera [140](#)
Rearview mirror [59](#)
Rear window defroster [152](#)
Recirculated-air mode [152](#)
Recommended fuel grade [192](#)
Recommended tire brands [199](#)
Refueling [190](#)
Remaining range [90](#)
Remote control/key [34](#)
Remote control, malfunction [38](#)
Remote control, universal [157](#)
Replacement fuse [219](#)
Replacement wheel [216](#)
Replacing parts [213](#)
Replacing wheels/tires [199](#)
Reporting safety defects [9](#)
RES button, see Cruise control [135](#)
Reserve warning, refer to Range [90](#)

Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM [110](#)
Residual heat, automatic climate control [153](#)
Retaining straps, securing cargo [182](#)
Retreaded tires [199](#)
Roadside parking lights [102](#)
Roller sunblinds [49](#)
RON recommended fuel grade [192](#)
Roofliner [17](#)
Roof load capacity [233](#)
Roof-mounted luggage rack [183](#)
Rope for tow-starting/towing [223](#)
Rubber components, care [227](#)

S

Safe braking [178](#)
Safety [7](#)
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat [56](#)
Safety belts [55](#)
Safety belts, care [228](#)
Safety Package, refer to Active Protection [127](#)
Safety reel, windows [49](#)
Safety systems, airbags [106](#)
Saving fuel [185](#)
Screen, refer to Control Display [18](#)
Screwdriver, see Onboard vehicle tool kit [213](#)
Screw thread, see screw thread for tow fitting, screw thread for tow fitting [224](#)
Sealant [200](#)
Seat belts, refer to Safety belts [55](#)
Seat heating, front [54](#)
Seat heating, rear [55](#)

Seating position for children [63](#)
Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory [58](#)
Seats [52](#)
Seats, front [52](#)
Seats, rear [55](#)
Seat ventilation, front [54](#)
Selection list in instrument cluster [94](#)
Selector lever [78](#)
Selector lever position [78](#)
Self-leveling suspension, air suspension [134](#)
Self-leveling suspension, malfunction [134](#)
Sensors, care [228](#)
Sequential mode [79](#)
Service and warranty [8](#)
Service requirements, Condition Based Service CBS [211](#)
Service requirements, display [92](#)
Service, Roadside Assistance [221](#)
Services, ConnectedDrive
Servotronic [134](#)
SET button, see Cruise control [135](#)
Settings, locking/unlocking [45](#)
Settings, M Drive [61](#)
Settings on Control Display [97](#)
Settings, storing for seat, mirrors, steering wheel [58](#)
Shift Lights [100](#)
Shoulder support [54](#)
Side airbags [106](#)
Side View [144](#)
Signaling, horn [14](#)
Signals when unlocking [45](#)
Sitting safely [52](#)
Size [232](#)
Ski and snowboard bag [167](#)

Slide/tilt glass roof [49](#)
Smoker's package [159](#)
Snow chains [203](#)
Socket, OBD Onboard Diagnostics [211](#)
Sockets, see Connecting electrical devices [161](#)
SOS button [220](#)
Spare fuse [219](#)
Spare tire [216](#)
Specified engine oil types [208](#)
Speed, average [96](#)
Speed limit detection, computer [96](#)
Speed limiter, display [93](#)
Speed Limit Information [93](#)
Speed warning [97](#)
Split screen [23](#)
Sport displays, torque display, performance display [97](#)
Stability control systems [129](#)
Standard view, head-up display [99](#)
Start/stop, automatic function [70](#)
Start/Stop button [68](#)
Start function during malfunction [35](#)
Starting the engine [69](#)
Status control display, tires [110](#)
Status information, iDrive [23](#)
Status of Owner's Manual [6](#)
Steering assistance [134](#)
Steering wheel, adjusting [60](#)
Steering wheel heating [61](#)
Steering wheel memory [58](#)
Steptronic Sport transmission [78](#)
Stopping the engine [69](#)
Storage compartment on the center console [169](#)
Storage compartments [168](#)

Storage compartments, locations [168](#)
Storage, tires [200](#)
Storing the vehicle [228](#)
Summer tires, tread [198](#)
Sun visor [159](#)
Supplementary text message [88](#)
Surround View [139](#)
Switch, refer to Cockpit [14](#)
Symbols [6](#)
Symbols in the status field [23](#)
SYNC program, automatic climate control [152](#)
System states of dynamic driving [92](#)

T

Tachometer [89](#)
Tailgate, automatic [40](#)
Tailgate, closing with no-touch activation [44](#)
Tailgate, opening with no-touch activation [44](#)
Tailgate via remote control [38](#)
Tail lights [216](#)
Technical changes, refer to Safety [7](#)
Technical data [232](#)
Technology, BMW M [176](#)
Telephone, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Temperature, automatic climate control [151](#)
Temperature display for external temperature [89](#)
Temperature, engine oil [89](#)
Terminal, starting aid [222](#)
Text message, supplementary [88](#)
Theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system [46](#)

Thermal camera, see Night Vision [119](#)
Thigh support [53](#)
Tilt alarm sensor [47](#)
Time of arrival [96](#)
Tire damage [198](#)
Tire identification marks [196](#)
Tire inflation pressure [194](#)
Tire inflation pressure monitor, refer to FTM [112](#)
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM [109](#)
Tires, changing [199](#)
Tire sealant [200](#)
Tires, everything on wheels and tires [194](#)
Tire tread [198](#)
Tone, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Tool [213](#)
Top View [142](#)
Total vehicle weight [233](#)
Touchpad [21](#)
Tow fitting [224](#)
Towing [223](#)
Tow lug, see tow fitting [224](#)
Tow-starting [223](#)
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor [109](#)
Transmission [78](#)
Transmission lock, electronic unlocking [81](#)
Transporting children safely [63](#)
Tread, tires [198](#)
Trip computer [96](#)
Triple turn signal activation [75](#)
Trip odometer [89](#)
Turning circle lines, rearview camera [141](#)
Turn signals, operation [75](#)

U

Unintentional alarm [47](#)
Units of measure [98](#)
Universal remote control [157](#)
Unlocking/locking via door lock [39](#)
Unlocking/locking with remote control [37](#)
Unlocking, settings [45](#)
Unpaved roads, cross-country trips [179](#)
Updates made after the editorial deadline [6](#)
Upholstery care [227](#)
USB interface [162](#)

V

V8 high-performance engine, High-performance engine V8 [176](#)
Vanity mirror [159](#)
Vehicle battery [218](#)
Vehicle battery, replacing [218](#)
Vehicle, break-in [177](#)
Vehicle care [226](#)
Vehicle features and options [6](#)
Vehicle identification number [9](#)
Vehicle jack [216](#)
Vehicle paint [226](#)
Vehicle storage [228](#)
Vehicle wash [225](#)
Ventilation [153](#)
Ventilation, refer to Parked-car ventilation [155](#)
Venting, see ventilation [153](#)
Vent, see ventilation [153](#)
Vertical Dynamic Control [133](#)
VIN, see vehicle identification number [9](#)
Voice activation system [26](#)

W

Warning and indicator lamps, see Check Control [85](#)
Warning displays, see Check Control [85](#)
Warning messages, see Check Control [85](#)
Warning triangle [221](#)
Washer fluid [77](#)
Washer nozzles, windshield [77](#)
Washer system [75](#)
Washing, vehicle [225](#)
Water on roads [178](#)
Weights [233](#)
Welcome lights [101](#)
Wheel cleaner [227](#)
Wheels, changing [199](#)
Wheels, everything on wheels and tires [194](#)
Wheels, Flat Tire Monitor FTM [112](#)
Wheels, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM [109](#)
Window defroster, rear [152](#)
Windows, powered [48](#)
Windshield washer fluid [77](#)
Windshield washer nozzles [77](#)
Windshield washer system [75](#)
Windshield wiper [75](#)
Winter storage, care [228](#)
Winter tires, suitable tires [199](#)
Winter tires, tread [198](#)
Wiper [75](#)
Wiper blades, replacing [213](#)
Wiper fluid [77](#)
Wiper, fold-out position [77](#)
Wiper system [75](#)
Wood, care [227](#)
Word match concept, navigation [25](#)

Wrench, see Onboard vehicle
tool kit [213](#)

X

xDrive [132](#)

Xenon headlights, bulb re-
placement [215](#)

BMW M



The Ultimate
Driving Machine

01 40 2 956 993 ue

